PE 1129
.G3 B27
1866
Copy 1

PE 1129
.G3 B27
1866
Copy 1

Class PE1129

Book .G3B27

1866

J. Kenel.

AN

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

FOR

THE USE

OF

THE GERMANS.

BY

Dr. A. BASKERVILLE,

PRINCIPAL OF AN EDUCATIONAL ESTABLISHMENT,

LINDENTHAL HOUSE, near COLOGNE.

SECOND EDITION.

COLOGNE, 1866.

PUBLISHED BY M. DUMONT-SCHAUBERG.

PRINTED BY M. DUMONT-SCHAUBERG.

PL1129
.G3B27
1866

Exchange
Conception College
SEP 21 1939

PREFACE.

More than ten years ago the author felt the want of an English Grammar, written in English, for the use of the upper classes in schools, or private pupils, who had already acquired some knowledge of English by means of his Praktischen Lehrgang der englischen Sprache, or some other similar elementary work. The English Grammars written by Englishmen for their countrymen all contain precisely what such German pupils *do not* want; namely, an exposition of the Science of Grammar, but nothing at all of that which they most require; namely, English Grammar based upon a comparison with German Grammar. To supply the deficiency he commenced the present work, but it was abandoned for more congenial pursuits till, making use of his manuscript with the German pupils in his own Establishment, he became so convinced of its utility that he determined to complete it.

In the execution of the work the author bore in mind the English proverb, „A great book is a great evil", being himself thoroughly convinced that a great grammar is the

greatest of all evils for those who wish to acquire a foreign tongue. Hence it was his aim to condense the greatest amount of matter into the smallest possible space, to make the rules as short and simple as possible, and to give only those which are of real utility. The book scarcely exceeds in size that of his elementary Lehrgang, yet a careful comparison with the most voluminous grammars has convinced the author that he has omitted nothing, especially in the Syntax, that can be of any use to the most diligent student of the English language.

With regard to the *method* of teaching English by means of this grammar, the intelligent teacher will not be at a loss to employ it in various ways, the author will therefore mention two only, in which he has used it with great advantage. Firstly, and principally, in lessons devoted solely to the study of English grammar. The pupils should be made to read over both rules and examples carefully, then the teacher should read them aloud, the pupils closing their books, and, in both cases, making the translation if necessary. This should be repeated till the pupils are perfectly familiar with the rules, for one rule well learnt is of more use than the whole book superficially read over. The teacher would also find it advantageous then to make an oral translation of the examples, and cause the pupils to translate them back into English. The latter will now be well prepared to make their written exercises at home on what they have studied in the lesson. These exercises must consist of sentences composed by themselves and illustrating the rules they have learnt. The sentences should however be composed in such a manner that the pupils may, at the same time, improve in English composition as well as in Grammar. Let us suppose, for example, that the pupils be required to compose sentences illustrating the verbs in rule 566.

The pupils, if left to themselves, are apt to write short sentences, such as, „I avoid speaking of it. He missed seeing her. She put off writing.“ These sentences are not good; they should be much longer, and describe some event of every day life which has really, or may be supposed to have, taken place. The part illustrating the rule should be underlined. The following sentences may be taken as a specimen of what should be required from the pupils. „I received a letter from William, asking me to meet him at the railway station, at 6 o'clock, but I was hindered unexpectedly, and arrived at the station just as the train was starting, thus I unfortunately *missed seeing* him. I always *avoid speaking* of politics when my friend N. is present, for he sometimes becomes so excited as to lose all command over his temper.“ According to this plan the exercises must be fixed by the teacher at so many pages or lines, and not at a certain number of sentences. If carefully carried out, this plan will be found far superior to that usually adopted in schools of translating sentences from the German, as it will gradually lead the pupil to *think* in English, and to express his own thoughts, which is the grand object to be attained. We also recommend the teacher, in commencing the Syntax, not to begin at the beginning and go straight through the book, but to select those rules which are of the greatest importance and teach those thoroughly first. Thus, for example, in studying the use of the article, page 52, it is not necessary for the pupil to begin with rule 266; it will be sufficient for the teacher to inform him that the use of the article, in German corresponds with that of the English article except in the following cases; and then he must point out the paragraphs under rule 267 where they differ. Secondly, the author has found this grammar of great use in lessons devoted principally to conversation. In such lessons the want

of proper subjects for conversing on is with some pupils a great hindrance. The lesson should be therefore begun by reading the rules and the examples, which are so varied, and contain so much matter for thought, that almost every line will suggest a subject of conversation. Thus English conversation may be advantageously combined with grammar and even general instruction.

September 1859.

Preface to the Second Edition.

The appearance of a new edition of this work has afforded the author an opportunity of making many important additions of practical utility to the student. As this has necessitated an alteration the numbering of the rules, from which some inconvenience may arise in classes that have used the first edition, the author begs to state that no further changes in this respect will be made in any subsequent edition, as the work is now so complete that a further enlargement would but detract from its usefulness.

May 1866.

Contents.

Page

Letters 1
Pronunciation 1
Accent 14
The division of words into syllables 16
Capital Letters 16
Punctuation 17

Etymology.

Article 20
Noun 20
Number 21
Gender 24
Case 26
Adjective 27
Pronoun 28
Personal Pronouns 28
Possessive Pronouns 29
Reflective Pronouns 29
Demonstrative Pronouns 30
Relative Pronouns 30
Interrogative Pronouns 30
Determinate Pronouns 31
Indefinite Pronouns 31
Verb 31
Mood 32
Tense 32
Auxiliary Verbs 32
Regular Verbs 36
Irregular Verbs 38
Adverb 42
Preposition 44
Conjunction 44
Interjection 45
The Formation of Words . 45
Pure English or Saxon Prefixes 45
Latin Prefixes 45

Page

Greek Prefixes 46
French Prefixes 47
English Affixes or Terminations 47
Latin Terminations 48
Greek Terminations 49
French Terminations 50
Compound Words 50

Syntax.

Articles 52
Nouns 58
Nominative Case 58
Genitive Case 60
Dative Case 62
Accusative Case 63
Dative and Accusative 63
Apposition 64
Number 64
Adjective 65
Position of the Adjective 65
Nouns used as Adjectives 66
Adjectives used as Nouns 67
Degrees of Comparison 69
Further Remarks on Adjectives 71
Numerals 72
Cardinal Numbers 72
Ordinal Numbers 73
Adverbial Ordinal Numbers ... 73
Multiplication Numbers 73
Fractional Numbers 74
Pronouns 74
Personal Pronouns 74
The Pronoun **one** 76
The German Pronoun man ... 78
Possessive Pronouns 79
Reflective Pronouns 80
Demonstrative Pronouns 82
Relative Pronouns 83

Page

Interrogative Pronouns 86
Determinative Pronouns 87
Indefinite Pronouns 88
Verb 93
Agreement of the Verb with its Subject 93
Agreement in Number 93
Agreement in Person 95
Auxiliary Verbs 95
To Be 96
To Have 97
May, Might 98
Can, Could 99
Shall, Should 100
Will, Would 103
Must 105
Ought 105
Dare and Need 105
Do 106
The German Verb laſſen 108
Government of Verbs 109
Passive Verbs 111
Neuter Verbs 113
Reflective Verbs 113
Impersonal Verbs 114
Participles 115

Page

Active Participle in **ing** 115
Passive Participle 120
Moods and Tenses 121
The Infinitive 121
The Indicative 125
The Imperative 126
The Subjunctive 126
Adverbs 127
Prepositions 133
Simple Prepositions 134
Conjunctions 155
Simple Conjunctions 155
Conjunctions with their Correlatives 162
Appendix 164
Adjectives with the prepositions they govern 164
Verbs with the prepositions they govern 167
List of Verbs which govern the accusative in English, but take another case after them in German 172
Verbs which are reflective in German, but not in English. 172
Complete list of Abbreviations. 174

ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

Letters.

1. The English language has twenty six letters. They are pronounced as follows:

A, a, — eh.	J, j, — dscheh.	S, s, — ess.
B, b, — bih.	K, k, — keh.	T, t, — tih.
C, c, — ßih.	L, l, — ell.	U, u, — juh.
D, d, — dih.	M, m, — emm.	V, v, — wih.
E, e, — ih.	N, n, — enn.	W, w, — döbb'ljuh.
F, f, — eff.	O, o, — oh.	X, x, — eckß.
G, g, — dschih.	P, p, — pih.	Y, y, — uei.
H, h, — ehtsch.	Q, q, — kiuh.	Z, z, — sedd.
I, i, — ei.	R, r, — arr.	

2. *A, e, i, o, u* are vowels, the rest are consonants. *W* and *y*, when they do not begin a word or syllable, are also vowels.
3. A *diphthong* is the union of two vowels, and a *triphthong* the union of three vowels, into one sound, as the *oi* in *boil* and the *ieu* in *adieu*.

Pronunciation.

4. As the vowels have many different sounds, which will be frequently referred to in the following rules on pronunciation, we give a tabular view of the whole, and recommend the student to make himself thoroughly acquainted with them before proceeding to study these rules.

ȧ	sounds as in	fȧte,	lȧte,	ȯ	sounds as in	cȯld,	pȯle.
ȧ̊	„ „ „	fȧ̊r,	cȧ̊r,	ȯ̊	„ „ „	mȯ̊ve,	prȯ̊ve.
ȧ̊	„ long as in	fȧ̊ll,	wȧ̊r.	ȯ̊	„ long as in	nȯ̊r,	fȯ̊r.
	„ short „ „	whȧ̊t,	sȧ̊lt.		„ short „ „	nȯ̊t,	spȯ̊t.
ȧ̂	„ as in	fȧ̂t,	rȧ̂t.	ȯ̂	„ as in	dȯ̂ve,	lȯ̂ve.
ȧ̊	„ „ „	cȧ̊re,	rȧ̊re.	u̇	„ „ „	tu̇be,	u̇se.
ė	„ „ „	mė,	shė.	ů	„ „ „	bů̊t,	tů̊b.
ė̊	„ „ „	mė̊t,	mė̊n.	ů̊	„ „ „	bů̊ll,	pů̊ll.
ı̇	sounds as in	lı̇ne,	tı̇me.	ů̂	„ „ „	trů̂th,	brů̂te.
ı̊	„ „ „	sı̊n,	thı̊n.				

A.

5. *A* sounds like à:
   1. Before a consonant and *e* mute; as, *fame, late, paste, spade, rage.* Exceptions are *hâve* and *âre.*
   2. When it terminates an accented syllable; as, pa'-per, pa'-tient, spec-ta'-tor. Except fâ'ther, wâ'-ter, adâ'-gio, drâ'-ma, mam-mâ', papâ', hurrâ.
6. *A* has the sound of â:
   1. Before *r* in words of one syllable and when *r* is followed by another consonant; as, *car, far, mar, star, arm, regard, barter, cardinal, parcel.*
   2. Before the terminations *lf, lve, lm,* and *th;* as, *calf, half, calve, halve, calm, psalm, bath, path.* Except *hâth.*
7. *A* is sounded å long:
   1. Before *ld, lk, ll* and in those words compounded of *all,* in which one *l* is omitted; as, *bald, scald, stalk, walk, call, fall; almost, always, befal, withal.* Except *shåll, måll, Pall Mall,* a street in London, pronounced *pĕll mĕll.*
   2. After *q* and *w* before *r* in the same syllable; as, *quart, quarter, war, warm, swarm, warble, warden.*
8. *A* sounds like å short:
   1. After *q* and *w,* followed by *b, d, l, n, s, t,* in the same syllable; as, *squab-ble, squad-ron, qual-ity, squan-der, squat; wab-ble, wad-ding, wal-low, want, was, what.*
   2. Before *ls* and *lt;* as, *balsam, false, salt, malt, halter, alter, altar.*
9. *A* has the sound of ă:
   1. Before any single consonant except *r;* as, *am, bad, cat, fat, has, hap-py, man-ner, slan-der.*
   2. Before two consonants, except those mentioned in rules 6 and 7; as, *and, branch, chaff, dance, grasp, mask, pass.*
10. *A* is pronounced like à; before *re;* as, *care, declare, fare, pare, rare, share, sware, square, snare.*
11. *A* has the regular sounds:
   1. Of ĕ in *any, many, says, Thames, Pall Mall.*
   2. Of ĭ in the unaccented termination *age;* as, *cabbage, courage, mucilage, village.*
   3. Of ŭ in unaccented syllables before *r;* as, *friar, liar, altar.*
12. *A* is silent in *carriage, marriage, parliament, victuals* (vĭt-tls), *laudanum* (lŏdnŭm).
13. *Aa* is pronounced:
   1. Like å in *baa, aar, Saal, Baal.*
   2. Like â in *Aaron.*
   3. Like å in unaccented syllables; as, *Ca'naan, I'saac, Ba'laam.*
14. *Ae* sounds:
   1. Generally like ē; as, *Caesar, aera, Aeneas, paean, aether.*
   2. Sometimes like ĕ; as, *Aetna, Daedalus, Michaelmas, Aeschylus.*
15. *Ai* is pronounced like à; as, *aid, contain, gain, laid, paid, rain.* Except *plaid* (plåd), *again* (agĕn), *said* (sĕd), *aisle* (il); and the unaccented end syllables: as, *Britain* (britt'n), *villain* (vill'n), *captain* (captin).

16. *Ao* in *gaol* sounds like å; the word is frequently written *jail* (jåle).
17. *Au* sounds:
    1. Generally like å long; as, *author, bauble, cause, daunt, pause, taught.*
    2. Before *n* like å; as, *aunt, haunch, launch, laundress.* Also in *draught* (dråft), *laugh* (låf).
    3. Like ŏ short in *cauliflower, laudanum, launel, sausage.*
    4. Like ŏ in *hautboy, roquelaure.*
    5. Like å in *guage.*
18. *Aw* is the sound of å; as, *awe, bawl, crawl, law, saw, straw.*
19. *Ay* sounds like å; as, *day, pay, may.* Exceptions are *quay* (kẻ), *says* (sẻz), *ay* (å̀), *aye* (å̀), *mayor* (måre).

B.

20. *B* has always the same sound that the German *b* has at the beginning of words; as, *butter, number, tub.*
21. *B* is silent:
    1. After *m,* when both letters belong to the same syllable; as, *comb, coxcomb, climb, limb, tomb, thumb;* but *b* is pronounced in *accumb, succumb* and *rhomb.*
    2. Before *t* in the same syllable; as, *debt, debtor, doubt, redoubted, subtle.* The *b* is sounded in *subtile* and its compounds.

C.

22. *C* is pronounced hard, like *k:*
    1. Before the vowels *a, o* and *u;* as, *card, cord, curse.*
    2. Before the consonants *l, r* and *t;* as, *clever, Sclavonia, cross, tract.*
    3. At the end of a syllable; as, *music, flac-cid, vic-tim, duc-tile.*
23. It is pronounced soft like *s* before *ae, e* and *y;* as, *Caesar, centre, circle, cylindre.* Except *sceptic* (sk), *scirrhus* (sk).
24. *C* coming immediately after the accent, and followed, by *ea, eous, ia, ie* and *io,* sounds like *sh;* as, ò*cean, herbà*ceous, *patrì*cian, *an'*cient, *suspi*cion, *tena*cious.
25. *C* is muet in *czar, czarina, arbuscle, corpuscle, indict, indictment, muscle, victuals, victualler.*
26. In words from the Italian, *c* preserves its Italian sound of a soft *ch;* as, *vermicelli, violincello.*
27. *Ch* is pronounced:
    1. Hard, like *k,* in words derived from the ancient languages; as, *ache, archangel, architect, catechism, echo, epoch, mechanic, orchestre, monarch, stomach, scheme, school.* Except *arch, arched, archer, archery, arch-enemy, chastity, cherub.* Also words composed of *arch* before a consonant; as, *archbishop, archdeacon.*
    2. Like *tsh* in words of Saxon or Celtic origin; as, *child, chain, choice, much, rich, such, tench, which, wrench.*
    3. Like *sh* in words which have retained the French form; as, *chaise, Champagne, chandelier, charlatan, machine.*
28. *Ch* is mute in *drachm, schedule, schism, yacht.*

D.

29. *D* sounds like a soft German *d;* as, *dead, do, bread, lived.*

30. In the imperfect tense and past participle of verbs ending with the sharp consonants *f, k, p, ch, sh, ss* and *x;* the *ed* sounds like *t;* as, *puffed, picked, whipped, reproached, wished, missed, mixed.*

31. *D,* when it follows the accent, and precedes a diphthong which begins with *e* or *i,* or the vowel *u,* has a slight sound of *j;* as, *sol'dier, gran'deur, ver'dure.* The number of such words is, however, small, for all those which are derived from the ancient languages should preserve the pure sound of *d;* as, *Encyclope'dia, i'diom, me'dium, meri'dian, melo'dious, In'dian, insi'dious, te'dious.*

32. *D* is mute in *groundsel, handkerchief, handsome, handsel, riband,* usually written *ribbon;* also the first *d* in *Stadtholder* and *Wednesday.*

E.

33. *E* sounds like ė:

1. Before a consonant and silent *e;* as, *complete, impede, scene, these.* Exceptions are *ere, there, were, where,* in which it has the sound of å.
2. When it ends an accented syllable; as, *he, me, she, colle-gian, impe'rial, me'diate.*

34. *E* sounds like ẻ:

1. Between two consonants, in syllables not ending in *r* or silent *e;* as, *bet, wren, met, mẻs-sẻn-ger, nẻ-ver, per-pẻ-tuate.*
2. When there are two consonants between *e* and silent *e;* as, *hence, whence, wedge, opulence, penitence, revenge.*

35. *E* has the irregular sound:

1. Of ů before *r;* as, *her, serge, immerse, conquer, prefer, wonder.*
2. Of å in *clerk, serjeant.*
3. Of ĭ in *England.*

36. *E* is mute in the end of words; as, *race, since, oblige, spoke, darksome, recompense, immediate, productive.* Exceptions are syllables which have no other vowels; as, *he, she, me, bee, see, disagree, pedigree;* and words derived from the Greek; as, *acmė, epitomė, hyperbolė, apostrophė.*

37. *Ea* sounds:

1. Like ė in the greater number of words; as, *appear, bleach, cheap, dream, eat, fear, gleam, heal, increase, leaf, peace.*
2. Like ẻ in *bread, breadth, breakfast, breast, breath, cleanse, cleanly, dead, deaf, death, endeavour, feather, head, health, heaven, heavy, jealous, lead, leant, leather, leaven, meadow, meant, measure,*

peasant, pheasant, pleasant, pleasure, read, ready, real, seamstress, spread, stead, stealth, sweat, thread, threat, treachery, tread, treasure, wealth, weapon, weather, zealot, zealous, and their compounds.

3. Like å in *bear, bearer, forbear, forswear, pear, swear, tear, wear.*
4. Like å in *break, great, steak.*
5. Like å in *heart, hearty, hearth, hearken.*
6. Like ů before *r;* as, *dearth, earl, heard, pearl, search.*

38. *Eau* sounds like ò; as, *beau, bureau, flambeau, portemanteau.* Except in *beauty* and its compounds, in which it has the sound of ů.

39. *Ee* has the sound of é; as, *feet, succeed, sweet.* Exceptions are *breeches, threepence* and *threepenny,* where in the first always, and in the colloquial pronunciation of the two letter, it has the sound of ĭ.

40. *Ei* sounds:

1. Like å in *deign, eight, feign, feint, freight, heinous, inveigh, neigh, neighbour, reign, rein, reins, skein, veil, vein, weigh, weight,* and their compounds.
2. Like ĕ in *ceiling, conceit, conceive, deceit, deceive, perceive, seize, seisin, seignior, seigniory;* also in *either, neither* and *leisure,* though these three are frequently pronounced ītħer, nīther, lēsure.
3. Like å in *heir, heiress, their, theirs.*
4. Like ĭ in *height, sleight.*
5. Like ĕ in *heifer, nonpareil.*
6. Like ĭ in *foreign, foreigner, forfeit, forfeiture, sovereign, sovereignty, surfeit.*

41. *Eo* sounds:

1. Like ů in the syllables *cheon, geon, geous;* as, *luncheon, puncheon, surgeon, bludgeon, gorgeous, advantageous.*
2. Like ĭ in *people.*
3. Like ĕ in *leopard, jeopardy, feoffee,* and its compounds.
4. Like ŏ short in *George, Georgic.*
5. Like ò in *yeoman, yeomanry.*
6. Like ů in *feod, feodal.*
7. Like ŭ in *galleon.*

42. *Eu* sounds like ů; as, *Europe, feud, neuter.* Except *grandeur, connaisseur,* where *eu* retains its French pronunciation.

43. *Ew* sounds:

1. Generally like ů; as, *dew, yew, new, pewter, few.*
2. Like ŭ after *r* and *l;* as, *brew, crew, threw; flew, blew, lewd.*
3. Like ò in *sew, sewer, shew, strew, Shrewsbury.*

44. *Ewe* sounds like ů in *ewe* and *ewer.*

45. *Ey* sounds:

1. When accented like å; as, *prey, they, convey, eyry.*
2. When unaccented like ĭ; as, *barley, journey, valley.*
3. Like ĕ in *key.*

46. *Eye* sounds like ī in *eye.*

F.

47. *F* sounds as in German; as, *fond, five, off.* Except in *of* where it has the sound of *v.*

48. *F* is silent only in the colloquial pronunciation of *half-penny* (ȧpenny) and *halfpence* (ȧpence).

G.

49. *G* is pronounced hard:
   1. Before *a, o, u, l* and *r;* as, *game, God, gull, glutton, great.* Except in *gaol, gaoler.* See rule 16.
   2. At the end of a word; as, *grog, snug, tug.*
   3. Before *e* and i, in words derived from the Saxon; as, *anger, finger, geese, get, gild, give, digging, rugged, swagger.*
50. *G* is soft, like *dsh,* before *e, i* and *y,* in words derived from the ancient languages; as, *angel, generous, genius, gem, giant, gymnasium, Egypt, apology. exaggerate, suggest.*
51. *G* is silent before *m* and *n* in the same syllable; as, *phlegm, apothegm, gnat, gnash, gnaw, impugn, campaign, sign, malign, condign.* Also in *bagnio, intaglio, poignant, seraglio, signior.*
52. *Gh* sounds:
   1. Like *g* hard at the beginning of a syllable; as, *ghost, aghast.*
   2. Like *f* in *chough, cough, draught, draughts, enough, laugh, rough, slough, tough, trough.*
   3. Like *k* in *lough, shough* and *hough.* See rule 83.
53. *Gh* is silent at the end of a word and before *t;* as, *high, neigh, weigh, thigh, bough, plough, borough, through; might, night, sought, wrought.*

H.

54. *H,* when aspirated, sounds as in German; as, *host, hard, house, behind.*
55. *H* is silent after *r;* as, *rhetoric, Rhine, rheumatism, myrrh.* Also in the following words: *heir, heiress, heirloom, herb, herbage, honest, honesty, honestly, honor, honorable, honorably, hospital, hostler, hour, hourly, humble, humor, humorist, humorous, humorously, humorsome, shepherd, shepherdess.*

I.

56. *I* is like ı:
   1. In accented syllables, when silent *e* is preceded by a single consonant; as, *dine, fine, fire, mine, ripe, slime, wine, wile, refine, alive.* Except *give* and *live.*
   2. At the end of an accented syllable; as, *ti'-tle, di'-al, vi'-olet, pri'-ority.*
   3. Before the terminations *gh, ght, gn, ld, nd,* when they belong to the same syllable; as, *high, sigh, might, right, sign, condign, child, mild, bind, mind.* Exceptions are *gild, wind* (in poetry *wind), rescind, abscind, prescind.*
   4. In *pint, Christ, isle, island, climb, viscount.*

57. *I* sounds like ĭ:

1. In all syllables ending with a single consonant, except *r;* as, *gin, him, this, sit, whip, sin-cere, win-ner, vin-dicate, swim-mer, di-vin-ity.*
2. Before two consonants, with or without silent *e;* as, *bliss, inn, film, fish, prince, bridge, hinge, whince.*
3. When it terminates an unaccented syllable; as, *di-vin'-ity, quali-fi-ca'tion, indem'-ni-fy.*

58. *I* has the irregular sound:

1. Of ŭ before *r;* as, *bird, dirt, virtue, mirth, birth, firm;* but when *i* comes before single or double *r,* followed by a vowel, it preserves the sound of ĭ; as, *conspiracy, spirit, virulent, irregular, irrate.*
2. Of ē in the following words dirived, from the French: *ambergris, antique, bombasin, Brazil, capuchin, caprice, chagrin, critique, fascine, fatigue, frize, gaberdine, glacis, intrigue, invalid, machine, magazine, marine, oblique, palanquin, pique, police, profile, quarantine, routine, tambourine, transmarine, ultramarine, verdigris.*

59. *I* is mute in the words *business* and *venison.*

60. *Ia,* in the terminations *ial, ian, iard* and *iate,* though not strictly, a diphthong, generally forms but one sound, like *ya;* as *Christian, Spaniard, filial, conciliate.*

61. *Ie* is pronounced:

1. Generally like ē; as, *believe, chief, fiend, pierce, shield, grenadier.*
2. Like ī in *die, hie, lie, pie, tie, vie.*
3. Like ĭ in *mischief, mischievous, sieve.*
4. Like ē in unaccented syllables; as, *brazier, glazier, osier, hosier.* Also in *friend.*

62. When nouns or verbs change *y* into *ie,* the *i* preserves the long or short sound of the original word; as, *fly, flies; deny, denies; lady, ladies; bury, buries.*

63. *Ieu* sounds like ū in *adieu, lieu* and *purlieu;* and like ĭ in *lieutenant, lieutenancy.*

64. *Io,* in the terminations *sion* and *tion,* sounds like ŭ; as, *mission, decision, corruption, desertion.* In *cushion io* sounds like ĭ.

65. *Iou,* after *c* soft, *s, t* and *x* sounds like ŭ, the terminations *cious, sious, tious,* being pronounced *shŭs;* as, *precious, dissensious, ambitious, anxious* (ăṅk-shŭs).

J.

66. *J* has the sound of *g* soft; as, *just, jury.* Except *Hallelujah* where it sounds like *y.*

K.

67. *K* sounds like hard *c;* as, *king, kitchen.* It is always mute before *n;* as, *knave, knife, know, knuckle, knock.*

L.

68. *L* is pronounced as in German; as, *London, lost, will. Colonel* sounds *cŭrnel.*

69. *L* is silent in the terminations *alf, alk* and *alm;* as, *half, calf, talk, chalk, alms, psalm, salmon, balm, calm.* Also in *calve, chaldron, falcon, falk, halser, halve, malkin, solder, yolk, could, should, would.*

M.

70. *M* sounds as in German; as, *man, am. Comptroller* is pronounced *controller,* and *compt, accompt* are pronounced, and now generally written, *count, account. M* is silent in *mnemonics.*

N.

71. *N* is pronounced as in German; as, *no, man, sink, sing, thank.*

It is silent in *auln, autumn, column, damn, condemn, contemn, hymn, kiln, limn, solemn.*

O.

72. *O* has the sound of ȯ:

1. When it is followed by a consonant and silent *e;* as, *alone, bone, hope, more, ore, rose.*
2. When it ends an accented syllable; as, *mo'-tion, o'-dious, memo-rial.*
3. Before the terminations *ld, lk, ll, lt, st* and *th;* as, *cold, gold, yolk, folk, roll, scroll, colt, dolt, ghost, most, both, sloth.* Exceptions are *revo̊lt, do̊ll, lo̊ll, co̊st, do̊st, lo̊st, fro̊st, do̊th, clo̊th, mo̊th, bro̊th, tro̊th.*

73. *O* has the sound of o̊ in *ado, approve, behove, do, gamboge, improve, lose, move, prove, tomb, to, two, who, whose, whom, womb.*

74. *O* is pronounced like ô:

1. Long before *r;* as, *for, corn, fortunate, horse.* There are many exceptions to this rule; as, *afforˆd, borne, corps, force, ford, fort, horde, porch, pork, port, portion, portrait, sport, sword, torn, word, world, worse, worn.*
2. Short, in all accented syllables ending with a single consonant except r; as, *anon, got, hog, from, ox, God, con'-sul, com'-moner, mon'-itor, pon'-der, rot'-ten, son'-net.* Also in the unaccented syllables *com* and *con* at the beginning of words, though the sound somewhat approaches that of *c'm, c'n;* as, *combine', comman'd, conden'se, confer', confes'sor.*

75. *O* sounds like o̊ in *above, affront, among, amongst, attorney, borough, brother, colour, come, comely, comfort, company, compass, comrade, combat, conjure, constable, co-*

venant, cover, covet, discomfit, done, doth, dost, dove, dozen, front, glove, govern, honey, love, London, Monday, money, monger, mongrel, monk, monkey, month, mother, none, nothing, onion, other, oven, pommel, shove, shovel, sloven, smother, some, Somerset, son, sovereign, sponge, stomach, thorough, ton, tongue, won, word, work, wonder, world, worry, worse, worship, wort, worth.

76. *O* has the irregular sound:

1. Of ů in *bosom, Wolsey, Wolverhampton, Worcester, woman, wolf.*
2. Of ĭ in *women.*
3. Of *wo͝o* in *one, once.*
4. Of ů in unaccented terminations; as, *bullock, kingdom, million, develop, parrot.*

77. *Oa* has the sound of ȯ; as, *boat, coal, coat.* Except in *broad, groat, abroad,* where its sound is that of o͝o long.

78. *Oe* sounds:

1. Like ē when accented; as, *antoeci, phoenix, foetus;* also in *oesophagus, oedema.*
2. Like ĕ in *oecumenics, oecumenical, foetid, assafoetida.*
3. Like ȯ in *bilboes, doe, foe, hoe, mistletoe, sloe, toe, throe, woe.*
4. Like ů in *shoe, canoe.*
5. Like ů in *does.*

79. *Oeu* sounds like ů in *manoeuvre.*

80. *Oi* and *oy* are sounded o͝oĭ (something like the German eu); as, *boy, toil, voice, oysters. Oi* sounds like ē in *turquoise;* like ĭ in *chamois, tortoise;* like ĕ in the first diphthong of *avoir, dupois* and in *connoisseur;* like ů͞ĭ in *choir.*

81. *Oo* is pronounced:

1. Generally like ů; as, *boot, choose, fool, goose.*
2. Like ů before *k;* as, *book, brook, cook, hook, look, nook.* Also in *foot, good, hood, stood, soot, wood, wool* and their compounds.
3. Like ȯ in *brooch, blackamoor, door, floor.*
4. Like ů in *blood, flood, loof* (a sea term).

82. *Ou* sounds:

1. In most cases like *ow* (in German au); as, *found, mouse, proud, round, south.*
2. Like ů in *adjourn, country, couple, couplet, courage, courtesy, cousin, double, enough, flourish, housewife, journey, journal, joust, nourish, rough, scourge, slough, southerly, southern, Southwark, touch, tough, trouble, young.* Also in unaccented syllables; as, *fa'vour, hon'our, famous, soj'ourn.*
3. Like ȯ in *bourn, course, concourse, court, courtier, discourse, dough, four, fourteen, fourth, mould, moulder, mouldy, moult, mourn, poulterer, poultice, poultry, pour, recourse, resource, shoulder, smoulder, soul, source, though.*
4. Like ů in words from the French; as, *group, ragout, soup, tournament.* Also in *ousel, trough, uncouth, wound, you, your, youth.*
5. Like ů in *could, should, would.*

83. As the syllable *ough* is the most irregular combination of letters in the English language, we give a list of the

words in which it is contained, with the pronunciation of them. It sounds:

1. Like *ow* (in German au) in *bough, clough, doughty, drought, plough, slough.*
2. Like å in *besought, bought, brought, fought, nought, ought, sought, throught, wrought.*
3. Like o͡ff in *cough, trough.*
4. Like o͡ in *dough, though, although;* also but with the *o* less distinctly sounded, in *borough, thorough, thoroughly.*
5. Like å͡ff, in *chough, enough, rough, slough* (a cast off skin), *tough.*
6. Like u͡ in *through.*
7. Like o͡ck in *hough, shough, lough,* witch are also written *hock, shock, lock.*
8. Like å͡p in *hiccough,* written also *hickup.*

84. *Ow* is sounded:

1. Usually like *ou* (in German au); as, *allow, bow* (Verbeugung), *cow, endow, dowager, flower, lower* (trübe werden), *powder, renown, row* (Aufruhr), *sow* (Sau), *mow* (gehäuftes Korn), *shower, towel.*
2. Like o͡ in *bellow, bestow, blow, bow* (Bogen), *bowl, bowsprit, crow, flow, glow, grow, know, low, lower* (niedriger), *mow* (mähen), *own, row* (rudern, Reihe), *show, slow, snow, sow* (säen), *stow, stowage, strow, throw, tow, towards, trow.* Also in unaccented syllables at the end of words; as, *elbow, billow, borrow, fellow, morrow, sorrow, tallow, window.*

P.

85. *P* sounds as in German; as, *peace, ape, cup.* It is silent before *n, s* and *t;* and between *m* and *t;* as, *pneumatics, pneumatology, psalm, pseudo, pshaw; empty, redemption.* Also in *corps, seampstress* (better *seamstress*), *raspberry, receipt.* In *cupboard p* sounds like *b.*

86. *Ph* has the sound:

1. Generally of *f;* as, *phantom, physical, atmosphere, epitaph.*
2. Of *v* in *nephew, Stephen.*
3. Of *p* in *diphthong, triphthong, naphtha, ophthalmic.*

87. *Ph* is mute in *apophthegm, phtisic, phthisical.*

Q.

88. *Q* has always the sound of *k,* and is followed only by *u;* as, *quart, quaint, quest.*

Qu sounds:

1. Generally like *kw* (like *qu* in the German word Quelle); as, *quantity, queen, quarter, quoth.*
2. Like *k* in words of French derivation; as, *conquer, critique, grotesque, harlequin, liquor, masquerade, piquant.*

R.

89. *R* at the beginning of words, or after a consonant, sounds as in German; as, *rude, roast, ran, bread, drum, front, strand.* After a vowel it has a softer sound; as, *order, charm, firm, dear, fire, mere, ore.*

90. The unaccented syllable *re*, after a consonant, sounds like *ů̂r*; as, *eagre, fibre, mitre, massacre, spectre, theatre.*
91. *R* is silent in the abbreviation *Mrs.* pronounced *mi̊ssi̊s*. *Iron* sounds like *ìů̂rn; apron* has its regular sound, and the colloquial one of *àpů̂rn.*

S.*)

92. *S* is pronounced hard (like the German ß):
   1. At the beginning of a word; as, *sun, sorry, spoil, sting.*
   2. After the sharp consonants *c, f, k, p, t, ph;* as, *stoics, chiefs, clocks, lips, lights, sylphs.*
   3. In the accented syllable *dis;* also when *dis* is unaccented if followed by a sharp consonant; as, *dis'solute, dis'agree, dis'sipate, dis'tance; discourse', disfig'ure, dispar'age, distaste'.*
   4. In *mis;* and the adjective terminations *se, sive, sory, some;* as, *miscreant, misgovern, misled, misuse; base, precise, close, profuse, persuasive, exclusive, delusory, cursory, troublesome, handsome.*
   5. With silent *e* after *l, n, r;* as, *pulse, convulse, tense, expense, purse, worse.*
93. *S* is pronounced soft (like the German *s* in Sohn):
   1. After *b, d, g* hard, *ve* and the liquids *l, m, n, r;* as, *tubs, buds, bags, thrives, seals, seams, means, curs.*
   2. In the terminations *asm, ism, son, sen, sin;* and after the syllable *re;* as, *spasm, catechism, reason, chosen, resin; resume, resound.*
94. *S* sounds like *sh:*
   1. In *sion,* preceded by *l, n, r;* as, *expulsion, dimension, excursion, passion.*
   2. Before *ů̂* preceded by *n* or *s;* as, *sensual, censure, pressure, fissure.*
   3. In *sure, sugar, Asia, Persia.*
95. *S* sounds like *zh:*
   1. In *sion* preceded by a vowel; as, *invasion, decision, confusion.*
   2. Before *ů̂* preceded by an accented vowel; as, *pleasure, sei'zure, lei'sure, u'sury.*
96. *S* is mute in *aisle, isle, island, islander, corps, demesne, disme, carlisle, pas, puisne, sous, viscount.*

T.

97. *T* sounds as in German; as, *tub, but, mistake.*
98. *T* before *i* if followed by another vowel, has the sound of *sh,* when the preceding syllable has either the principal or secondary accent; as, *sa'tiate, pa'tience, partial'ity, Por'tia, Hora'tius, Ti'tian, na'tion, mo'tion, commendation.* Except in terminations containing *ie* derived from *y;* as, city, *ci'ties;* I pity, he *pities;* fifty, *fif'tieth;* mighty, *migh'tier.*

---

*) Heussi has six closely printed pages on the pronunciation of the letter s. The student will doubtless thank us for giving only a few of the more important rules.

99. *T* is pronounced with a slight sound of soft *ch:*
   1. When an accented *s* or *x* precedes the *t* which is followed by *i* and another vowel; as, *celestial, ques'tion, combustion, mix'tion, Christian.*
   2. Before ŭ and *eous* after the accented syllable; as, *na'ture, vir'tue, for'tune, righ'teous, cour'teous, presump'tious, lig'ature, prem'ature.* Except the termination *tude;* as, *fortitude, latitude.*

100. *T* is silent in the terminations *sten* and *stle,* and their etymological changes; as, *fasten, fastening, bustle, bustling, castle, bristle, bristled.* It is mute also in *bankruptcy, billet-doux, chestnut, christmas, currant, debut, eclat, gout, hautboy, hostler, mortgage, often, ragout, soften, toupet, trait, waistcoat, wristband.*

101. *Th* has two sounds; a sharp one, as in *think,* and a soft one, as in *thou.* It is pronounced sharp:
   1. At the beginning of words; as, *thought, theatre, thirty, thumb, thistle, thousand.* Exceptions are *this, that, these, those, thou, thee, they, them, thy, thine, their, theirs, the, than, then, thence, there, thither, though, thus.*
   2. At the end of words; as, *birth, depth, fifth, oath, path, south, tooth, teeth, wreath.* Except *smooth, booth, with* and the verbs to *wreath,* to *loath,* to *seeth,* to *smooth,* to *sooth,* to *mouth.*
   3. In the middle of words, after or before a consonant; as, *panther, orthodox, misanthrope, athwart.* Except *brethren, farthing, farther, farthingale, northern, worthy.*
   4. Between two vowels, in words derived from the ancient languages; as, *apathy, authority, ether, leviathan, apothecary, mathematics, method.*

102. *Th* is pronounced soft between two vowels, in words derived from the Saxon; as, *clothe, breathe, bathe, blithe, father, feather, heathen, whither, either, gather, mother.*

103. *Th* sounds like a single *t* in *asthma, Anthony, isthmus, phthisic, Thames, thyme, Thomas, Thompson.*
Th is mute in *clothes.*

U.

104. *U* sounds like ù:
   1. In accented syllables ending in silent *e;* as, *cure, due, use, abuse, mature.*
   2. When it is the last lettre of an accented syllable; as, *cu-'bic, fu-'ry, cu'-cumber.*

105. *U* sounds like ŭ before a consonant belonging to the same syllable; as, *but, rub, tub, lust, must, lum'-ber, mur'-mur, pur'-pose.*

106. *U* has the sound of ŭ in *bull, bullock, bully, bullet, bulwark, bullion, bush, bushel, butcher, cuckoo, cushion, fuller, fullingmill, hussar, hussa, hurrah, pull, pulley, pullet, push, pulpit, puss, pudding, put, sugar.* Also in words compounded of *full;* as, *fulfil, dreadful, mouthful, bountiful.*

107. *U* sounds like ŭ after r; as, *rue, true, brute, frugal, truth, fruit.*

108. *U* has the irregular sound:
   1. Of ĭ in *busy, business, ferule, lettuce, minute.*
   2. Of ĕ in *bury, burial, Canterbury.*
109. *U* is mute in *biscuit, build, buy, circuit, conduit, conquer, conqueror, coquet, dis-guise, exchequer, guard, guardian, guarantee, guerdon, guess, guest, guidance, guide, guild, guildhall, guile, guilt, guillotine, guinea, guise, guitar, Gui, harlequin, lacquay, liquor, masquerade, piquant, plagny, quadrille, roguy, victuals, victualler.*
110. In *ua* after *q, s* or *g* in the same syllable, the *u* sounds like ŭ and the *a* according to the rules for this vowel; as, *quake, quarrel, squander, suavity, assuage, language.*
111. *Ue* is subject to the same rules as *ua;* as, *query, quell, desuetude, sequence, unguent.* It is silent in the terminations *gue* and *que*; as, *pedagogue, fugue, plague, colleague, pique, casque, antique.*
112. *Ui* is pronounced:
   1. According to the rules for *ua* and *ue;* as, *anguish, languid, quite, quiet, pursuivant, cuirass.*
   2. Like ĭ in *biscuit, build, circuit, conduit, guild, guilt, guillotine, guinea, guitar, harlequin.*
   3. Like ī in *guidance, guide, guile, guise, disguise.*
   4. Like ŭ after *r;* as, *bruise, fruit, recruit;* also in *juice, sluice, suit, suitable, suitor, pursuit.*
   5. Like ū in *nuisance.*
113. *Uo* follows the rules of *ua* &c.; as, *quote, quotient, quondam, aliquot.*
114. *Uy* sounds:
   1. Like ŭĕ after *q;* as, *obloquy, soliloquy.*
   2. Like ĭ in *buy, Guy.*
   3. Like ī in *plaguy.*

V.

115. *V* is pronounced like a strong German *w,* or the French *v;* as, *vile, vice, save, love, five.*

W.

116. *W* before a vowel sounds like ŭ; as, *water, was, wealth, wind, worse.*
117. *W* before *h* is pronounced *h*ŭ; as, *white, when, what.*
118. For *w* at the end of a word see paragraphs 18, 43 and 84.
119. *W* is mute:
   1. Before *r;* as, *wreath, wrong, wretch.*
   2. Before *ho;* as, *who, whose, whom, whole.*
   3. In *answer, Greenwich, gunwale, housewife, housewifery, Southwark, sword, two, twopence, toward, towards.* Also the second *w* in *Warwick, Woolwich.*

X.

120. *X* sounds like *ks:*
   1. At the end of an accented syllable; as, *ex'-ercise, ax'-iom, box'ing, fix'-ture.*
   2. When it precedes an accented syllable which begins with a consonant; as, *ex-cuse', ex-pect, ex-tend'.*
   3. When there is an unaccented syllable between the *x* and the accent; as, *ex-e-cu'te, ex-hi-bi'tion, ex-ha-la'tion.*

121. *X* sounds like *gs* before an accented syllable which begins with a vowel, also when an *h* precedes the vowel; as, *ex-act', ex-ist', ex-am'ple; ex-hale', ex-hort', ex-haust'.* Except in compound words, the primitive word of which ends in *x;* as, tax, *taxation,* vex, *vexation.*

122. *X* terminating an accented syllable before *u, ion* and *ious* sounds like *ksh;* as, *lux'-ury, anx'-ious, nox'-ious, connex'-ion, crucifix'-ion.*

123. *X* begins only words derived from the Greek, where it is pronounced like *z;* as, *Xerxes, Xenophon, Xantippe, Xenocrates.*

Y.

124. *Y,* at the beginning of words, sounds like the German *j;* as, *year, yonder, youth.*

125. *Y* at the end, or in the middle, of a word or syllable is a vowel, and has the same sound as *i* would have in the same situation; as, *day, deny', occupy', van'ity, mythol'ogy, nymph, system, myrrh, myrtle, Syria.*

Z.

126. *Z* has the sound of soft *s;* as, *zeal, amazed, razor.*

127. *Z* in the syllables *zure, zier,* after an accented syllable, sounds like *zh;* as, *a'-zure, sei'-zure, gra'-zier, gla'zier.*

128. *Z* sounds like sharp *s* in *Fitz;* as, *Fitzclarence, Fitzwilliam,* and like *ts* in words from the Italian; as, *Mezzotinto.* It is silent in *rendezvous.*

Accent.

129. Words of two syllables formed by the addition of a termination to a root are accentuated on the first syllable; as, *plant'er, li'ar, drunk'ard, act'-or, pun'-ster, law'yer, king'dom, man'hood, read'ing, laugh'ter, pock'et, sha'dow, wea'ken, burn'ish, stum'ble, wretch'ed, gold'en, slav'ish, lof'ty, jus'tice, spon'sor, com'ic, ac'tive, soph'ist, herb'age.*

Exceptions are the terminations *ade, ee, oo, oon, eer, ine* (when pronounced *een*) *ose,* and the words *cashier', fatigue', intrigue', oblique', antique';* as, *brigade', cascade', lessee', trustee', bamboo', tatoo', dragoon, lampoon', career', veneer', machine', marine', verbose', jocose'.* But *coff'ee, com'rade, dec'ade, troch'ee, feoff'ee, lev'ee;* follow the general rule.

130. Words of two syllables formed by adding a prefix to a root have the accent on the second syllable; as, *ahead', befriend', forbid', foresee', mistake', uphold', withdraw', abuse', appear', bisect', confide', corrupt', disjoin', exclude', impel', omit', postpone', repel', seduce', translate', abrupt', obscure', perverse', precise', profound', recess', reward', uncouth'.*

131. Words compounded of two distinct words take the accent on the first syllable; as, *bride'groom, bee'hive, load'stone, out'post, sun'shine, ware'house.*

132. When the same word is both noun and verb, the noun is accentuated on the first syllable, and the verb on the second.

Noun.	*Verb.*	*Noun.*	*Verb.*
ab'stract,	to abstract',	e'xile,	to exile',
com'pound,	to compound',	per'fume,	to perfume',
ess'ay,	to essay',	pro'ject,	to project'.

133. Some words have a double meaning, according to the position of the accent.

au'gust *(the eighth month),*	august' *(great, grand),*
mi'nute *(60 seconds),*	minute' *(small),*
de'sert *(wilderness),*	desert' *(merit),*
com'pact *(contract),*	compact' *(firm, close),*
su'pine *(of a verb),*	supine' *(indolent).*

134. Words of three syllables formed by the addition of a termination have mostly the accent on the first syllable; as, *ad'miral, pu'ritan, men'dicant, tol'erance, ad'vocate, bear'able, aff'luence, in'digent, op'posite, fab'ulist, mil'lion, cu'rious, ar'ticle, can'opy.*

135. Words of four and more syllables formed by adding a termination generally have the accent on the antepenultimate, or last syllable but two; as, *histo'rical, exem'plify, vari'ety, inquis'itive, aristo'cracy, ortho'graphy, an'atomy, thermo'meter, apo'strophe, hypo'thesis.*

136. Words of three or more syllables preserve the accent of the root from which they are derived; as, *appoint', appoint'ment, disappoint'ment; pleas'ure, displeas'ure, dis-*

pleas'urable; exclu'de, exclu'sion, exclu'sive, exclu'sively, exclu'sionist.

Observation. There are many exceptions to the three last rules, but to enumerate them all here would be of little practical utility, as the rules concerning them are of a very complicated nature, and contain many exceptions to the exceptions.

The division of words into syllables.

137. The prefixes and terminations of words derived from roots are always separated; as, *talk, talk-er, fear, fear-ing, fear-ful, wish, wish-es, re-deem, con-text, gold, gold-en.*

Observation. Silent *e*, omitted in the compounded word, causes an exception, and the word then comes under the following rule; as, *race, ra-cer, make, ma-ker.*

138. A single consonant between two vowels belongs to the last syllable; *ra-cer, e-ven, hea-ven, ci-ty, a-cid, du-ly, wi-dow.*

139. Double consonants are separated; as, *red-der, sum-mer, ap-pearance, mud-dy, con-nive, com-merce.*

140. Two consonants which can begin a syllable belong to the last syllable, when the preceding vowel is long; as, *a-cre, pa-tron, du-pli-cate.*

141. Two consonants between two vowels are separated when the preceding vowel is short; as, *ac-tive, dus-ter, bas-ket, won-der, der-vis.*

Observation. The two latter rules apply also to three consonants; as, *de-throne, de-stroy, o-chre, re-strain; dis-creet, dis-tract, os-trich.*

142. The consonant that precedes the termination *le* is always joined to it; as, *can-dle, tri-fle, gen-tle, no-ble, peo-ple, sin-gle, sic-kle, puz-zle, arti-cle.*

143. The compound consonants *ch, ph, sh, th*, are never separated, and belong to the following syllable; as, *ma-chine, ar-chi-tect, ne-phew, a-po-the-ca-ry, bi-shop, mo-ther, fa-ther.*

Capital Letters.

144. With capital letters should be written:

1. The first word of every book, chapter, and piece of writing.
2. The first word of every line of poetry.
3. The first word of a direct quotation; as, The Cyprians said to me, „Why do you weep?“
4. Every proper name; as, *John, London, Heckla, the Alps, the Thames, Regent Street, the Acropolis, the Times, the Leviathan. Victoria, Queen of Great Britain and Ireland.*

Observation. As proper names are considered the days of the week, the months of the year, the names of religious sects and political parties, and the names applied to the Deity; as, *Monday, June, the Catholics,*

the Stoics, the Tories, the Roundheads, God, Jehova, the most *High.* Also the words *Providence, Paradise, Purgatory, Elysium, Tartarus, Satan, Olympus* and frequently *Heaven* and *Hell.*

5. All adjectives derived from proper names; as, An *English* book. A *German* custom. A *London* Newspaper. *Rhenish* wine. The *Parisian* fashions. A *Catholic* priest. A *Protestant* clergyman.
6. The first word of every sentence after a full stop.
7. The first word after notes of interrogation and exclamation.

Observation. If the sense is intimately connected with what follows, a capital letter is not used after notes of interrogation and exclamation; as, How long wilt thou forget me, o Lord? *for ever? how long wilt thou hide thy face from me?* Eternity! *thou pleasing dreadful thought.*

8. The pronoun *I* and the interjection *O;* as, Unto thee *I* lift up mine eyes, *O* thou that dwellest in the heavens.
9. Every principal word in the titles of Books; as, *The Ecclesiastical* and *Political History* of the *Popes* of *Rome,* during the *Sixteenth* and *Seventeenth centuries. By Leopold Ranke, Professor* in the *University* of *Berlin: Translated* from the *German* by *Sarah Austin.*
10. Any important word in a sentence; as, Had they not destroyed the *Courts* of the *High Commission* and the *Star Chamber?* If the *Commons* impeached a favourite minister, the sovereign threw the chiefs of the *Opposition* into prison. The English were less oppressed after the *Restoration* than before the great *Rebellion.*

Punctuation.

145. The following stops and signs are made use of in English.

The Comma	[,]	The Hyphen	[-]
The Semicolon	[;]	The Diaeresis	[..]
The Colon	[:]	The Quotation	[„ “]
The Period or full stop	[.]	The Section	[§]
The Note of interrogation	[?]	The Apostrophe	[’]
The Note of exclamation	[!]	The Asterisk	[*]
The Dash / The Ellipsis	[—]	The Obelisk	[†]
		The Index	[☞]
The Parenthesis	[( )]	Parallels	[‖]
The Caret	[∧]		

146. The comma is used:

1. Less frequently than in German, not being employed before relative pronouns, conjunctions, the infinitive mood, unless the other rules for the use of the comma require it; as, *It is imprudent to buy things which you have not seen. Some ships are so large that they hold several thousand men. His desire is to excel all other men in learning.*
2. To separate all the simple members or clauses of a compound sentence; as, *Man, as he is illumined by knowledge, and guided by virtue, becomes respectable and happy. The king, approving the plan, put it into execution. To confess the truth, I was much in fault. To improve time, while we are blessed with health, will smooth the bed of sickness.*
3. When several words of the same part of speech follow each other; as, *David was a brave, wise, and pious prince. Poetry, music, and painting are called fine arts. A man loving, fearing, and serving God. Interest and ambition, honor and shame, friendship and enmity, gratitude and revenge, are the prime movers in public transactions.*

4. When words are placed in apposition, or in opposition, to each other; as, *It is the lark, the herald of the morn. Paul, the apostle of the Gentiles, was eminent for his zeal and knowledge. Though deep, yet clear; though gentle, yet not dull. London, the capital of England, the greatest city in the world, is on the river Thames.*
5. Before and after many adverbs and adverbial phrases; as, *Nay, you are wrong. He feared want, hence, he overvalued riches. Besides, what could you do? It is, in many respects, very imperfect.*
6. Before and after the name or title of a person addressed; as, *Come, Anthony, and young Octavius, come. I remain, Dear Sir, yours truly, Yes, Sir, I will. Friends, Romans, countrymen, lend me your ears.*

147. The semicolon divides the parts of a sentence which are less closely connected in sense than those separated by a comma; as, *And therefore, if a man write little, he had need have a great memory; if he confer little, have a present wit; and if he read little, have much cunning to seem to know that which he doth not.*

148. The colon is seldom required by a perspicuous writer, but it may be properly introduced into a long sentence, the sense of which does not admit of a full stop; as, *A divine legislator, uttering his voice from heaven; an almighty governor, stretching forth his arm to punish or reward; informing us of perpetual rest prepared hereafter for the righteous, and of indignation and wrath awaiting the wicked: these are the considerations which overawe the world, which support integrity, and check guilt.*

149. The period or full stop is used when the sense is complete; as, *This measure revived Bacon's hope. He made the most of his short respite. He attempted to work on the feeble mind of the king.*

150. The note of interrogation is used after questions; as, *Why was the French revolution so bloody and destructive? Why was our revolution of 1641 comparatively mild? Why was our revolution of 1688 milder still? Why was the American revolution the mildest of all?*

151. The note of exclamation is used after expressions of great emotions, or emphatic invocations and exclamations; as, *What folly and injustice in the revolutionary laws! What grotesque affectation in the revolutionary ceremonies! What fanaticism! What licentiousness! What cruelty! O Eternity! thou pleasing, dreadful thought!*

152. The dash is employed at some unexpected abrupt turn in a sentence, or to mark a significant pause; as, *His children — but here my heart began to bleed — and I was forced to go on with another part of the portrait. He was struggling for fortune, honour, liberty — all that makes life valuable.*

153. The Ellipsis points out the omission of some letters in a word; as *d—n* for *damn.*
154. The Parenthesis encloses a word added to a sentence to clear up the sense, or a clause which may be omitted without injury to the grammatical sense of sentence; as, *He (Mr. M.) denied the truth of the assertion. And was the ransom paid? It was; and paid (what can exalt his bounty more?) for thee.*
155. The Caret is used only in writing, and is put under the place where a word or letter has been omitted.
156. The Hyphen connects compound words; as, *to-morrow, self-love, son-in-law.*
157. The Diaeresis separates two vowels in pronunciation; as, *aërial.*
158. The Quotation encloses words taken from those of another person; as, „*Paint me, as I am,*“ said Oliver Cromwell, while sitting to young Lely, „*If you leave out the scars and the wrinkles, I will not pay you a shilling.*“
159. The Section divides the discourse into sections or paragraphs.
160. The Apostrophe marks the omission of a letter in a word which is abbreviated, and is also the sign of the genitive case; as, *'tis* for *it is, 'gainst* for *against, e'en* for *even,* my *brother's* house.
161. The Asterisk, Obelisk, Index, and Parallels refer the reader to the margin, or the bottom of the page, the first of those signs being that which is most generally used.

Etymology.

162. *Etymology* treats of the various kinds of words, with their declension, and classification.

There are nine sorts of words, commonly called *parts of speech*, namely: — *Article, Noun* or *Substantive, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction* and *Interjection.*

Article.

163. There are but two articles, *a*, called the indefinite, and *the*, called the definite article; as, *A* man, *a* horse, *the* woman.

164. The article *a* becomes *an* before a vowel, or a silent *h;* as, *an apple, an honest* man.

Observation. For a list of the words in which *h* is silent, see rule 55.

165. Before the words *one, once*, before words beginning with *eu, ew*, and also before *u*, when it preserves its original sound, *of* ù the article *a* is used; as, Mr. Such *a one, a once* respected man, *a European, a ewe, a university, a useful* book.

166. *An* is generally used before words beginning with an aspirated *h*, when the accent is on the second syllable: as, *An historical* event, *an heroic* action.

Noun.

167. Nouns are devided into five classes: — *proper nouns, appellative nouns, collective nouns, the names of stuffs*, and *abstract nouns.*

Proper nouns are the names peculiar to certain persons and things; as, *Cicero, John, London, Vesuvius.*

Appellative nouns are those which are common to all objects of the same class; as, *man, horse, book, table.*

Collective nouns comprise in themselves many objects forming together but one whole; as, *parliament, army, people, nation, family, cattle.*

The names of stuffs comprise substances which, in their usual signification, have no plural; as, *gold, meat, wood, paper, marble, beer, water.*

Abstract nouns are the names of qualities, or objects, of which the mind alone can form an idea; as, *hardness, softness, whiteness, darkness, light, prudence, anger, love, hope, charity, music, painting, poetry.*

Number.

168. The plural of nouns is formed by adding *s* to the singular; as, boy, *boys;* book, *books;* house, *houses.* Exceptions are:

1. Nouns ending in *ch* soft, *sh*, *s* or *x*, which take *es* in the plural; as, church, *churches;* brush, *brushes;* gas, *gases;* glass, *glasses;* fox, *foxes.*
2. Nouns ending in *o*, preceded by a consonant, which take *es* in the plural, as, cargo, *cargoes;* potato, *potatoes;* calico, *calicoes;* negro, *negroes.* The following are exceptions, and take *s* only: *canto, fresco, grotto, junto, portico, quarto, rotundo, solo, tyro.*
3. Nouns ending in *y* preceded by a consonant which change y into *ies;* as, lady, *ladies;* fly, *flies;* cry, *cries.* If a vowel precede the *y*, then *s* only is added; as, day, *days;* valley, *valleys.*
4. The following nouns which change *f* and *fe* into *ves:* Beef, *beeves;* calf, *calves;* elf, *elves;* half, *halves;* knife, *knives;* leaf, *leaves;* life, *lives;* loaf, *loaves;* self, *selves;* sheaf, *sheaves;* shelf, *shelves;* thief, *thieves;* wife, *wives;* wolf, *wolves;* staff, *staves.*
5. The following nouns which form their plural irregularly: Man, *men;* woman, *women;* ox, *oxen;* child, *children;* foot, *feet;* goose, *geese;* tooth, *teeth;* mouse, *mice;* louse, *lice.*

Observation. The nouns German, Norman, Mussulman, Ottoman and Roman not being compound words, do not change *man* into *men,* but form their plural regularly; as, Germans, Normans.

In compound words formed by a noun and adjective, or by two nouns joined by a preposition, the sign of the plural must be added to the first noun; as, court-martial, *courts*-martial, knight-errant, *knigths*-errant, brother-in-law, *brothers*-in-law.

When the word is composed of two nouns the former of which modifies the latter, the sign of the plural is added to the latter; as, pear-tree, pear-*trees*, spring-flower, spring-*flowers*, opera-singer, opera-*singers*.

169. The following nouns have a double plural:

Brother	{ brothers, sons of the same parents. brethren, in a figurative sense, as members of a church.
Die	{ dies, for coining. dice, for playing.
Fish	{ fishes, single fishes, when number is meant. fish, the species; as, Trout are nice *fish.*
Genius	{ geniuses, persons of great talent. genii, spirits.
Index	{ indexes, tables of contents. indices, algebraic exponents.
Pea	{ peas, single ones. pease, collectively; as, a dish of pease.
Penny	{ pennies, separate coins. pence, value; as, it cost four pence.
Cloth	{ cloths, kinds of cloth. clothes, articles of dress.

170. The following nouns have one plural agreeing with the singular, and another which differs in meaning, but has the same form.

Singular.	*Plural.*	*Explanation of the second Plural.*
Arm,	arms,	weapons; also a coat of arms.
Bead,	beads,	strings of beads used by the Catholics.
Colour,	colours,	flag or standard.
Custom,	customs,	taxes or duties on goods.
draught,	draughts,	game played on a chess board.
Drawer,	drawers,	under trousers.
Grain,	grains,	malt after beer has been brewed from it.
Effect,	effects,	moveable property.
Letter,	letters,	literature.
Light,	lights,	the lungs of animals.
Pain,	pains,	care or trouble.
Part,	parts,	abilities.
Quarter,	quarters,	lodgings.
Spirit,	Spirits,	disposition of mind. / spirituous liquors.
State,	states,	the different orders of a kingdom.
Wit,	wits,	the senses.

171. The following nouns have one plural, but which differs from the singular in signification.

Singular.	*Plural.*	*Explanation of the Plural.*
Ash,	ashes,	embers or cinders.
Copper,	coppers,	copper utensils.
Force,	forces,	troops.
Green,	greens,	all kinds of cabbages.
Iron,	irons,	fetters.
Physic,	physics,	natural philosophy.
Sand,	sands,	the sandy sea coast.

Observation. Whith these nouns may be classed the names of stuffs, which have a plural only when different kinds are meant; as, Silk; the silks of France. Wine; the wines of Spain.

172. Many nouns adopted from foreign languages, retain their original plural:

Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
Addendum,	addenda.	Desideratum,	desiderata.
Amanuensis,	amanuenses.	Diaeresis,	diaereses.
Analysis,	analyses.	Dilettante,	dilettanti.
Animalculum,	animalcula.	Dogma,	dogmata. / dogmas.
Antithesis,	antitheses.		
Apex,	apices.	Effluvium,	effluvia.
Appendix,	appendixes. / appendices.	Ellipsis,	ellipses.
		Emphasis,	emphases.
Arcanum,	arcana.	Erratum,	errata.
Automaton,	automata.	Focus,	foci.
Axis,	axes.	Formula,	formulae.
Bandit, / Banditto,	banditti.	Fungus,	fungi.
		Genius,	geniuses. / genii.
Basis,	bases.		
Beau,	beaux.	Genus,	genera.
Calculus,	calculi.	Gymnasium,	gymnasia.
Cherub,	cherubim. / cherubs.	Hippopotamus,	hippopotami.
		Hypothesis,	hypotheses.
Criterion,	criteria.	Ignis-fatuus,	ignes-fatui.
Crisis,	crises.	Index,	indexes, / indices.
Datum,	data.		

Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
Lamina,	laminae.	Postulatum,	postulata.
Larva,	larvae.	Radius,	radii.
Macula,	maculae.	Radix,	radices.
Madame,	mes-dames.	Ranunculus,	ranunculi.
Magus,	magi.	Sarcophagus,	sarcophagi.
Mammal,	mammalia.	Scoria,	scoriae.
Medium,	media.	Seraph,	seraphim. seraphs.
Memorandum,	memoranda. memorandums.	Series,	series.
Metarmorphosis,	metamorphoses.	Species,	species.
Momentum,	momenta.	Stamen,	stamina.
Monsieur,	messieurs.	Stimulus,	stimuli.
Nebula,	nebulae.	Stratum,	strata.
Oasis,	oases.	Thesis,	theses.
Parenthesis,	parentheses.	Tumulus,	tumuli.
Phasis,	phases.	Vertex,	vertices.
Phenomenon,	phenomena.	Virtuoso,	virtuosi.
Polypus,	polypi.	Vortex,	vortices.

173. The English language has a great many substantives which have no singular:

1. The names of sciences ending in *ies;* as, *mathematics, mechanics, optics, physics, politics, statistics, tactics.* Yet some of these are frequently used in the singular; as, Optics *treats* of the properties of light and vision.
2. Adjectives which by the addition of *s* have become nouns: — *Ancients, betters, bitters, commons, drinkables, eatables, greens, incurables, initials, moderns, moveables, nobles, sweets, valuables, vegetables.*
3. Some geographical names; as, The *Alps,* the *Andes,* the *Netherlands,* the *Indies,* the *Pyrenees,* the *Appenines,* the *Cordilleras,* the *Vosges,* the *Orkneys,* the *Canaries.*
4. The names of things composed of two corresponding parts; as, *Bellows, braces, breeches, compasses, curling-irons, drawers, nippers, nut-crackers, pantaloons, pincers, scissars, shears, snuffers, spectacles, stays, tongs, trousers, tweezers.*
5. Of the other nouns which have no singular the following are those most in use; — *Annals, antipodes, archives, assizes, assets, billiards, bowels, calends, dregs, entrails, environs, goods, ides, literati, lungs, matins, measles, morals, nones, oats, odds, regimentals, riches, sessions, shambles, stocks, thanks, tidings, vespers, victuals, wages.*

174. Some nouns, though they have the form of the plural, are in the singular; as, *gallows, summons.* Others are both singular and plural; as, *alms, amends, apparatus, corps, means, news, pains, series, species; news* is however generally singular.

175. The nouns *deer, sheep, swine, elk;* and the names of fishes; as, *cod, carp, pike, salmon, trout,* preserve the same form in both numbers.

176. Some abstract nouns which take the plural form in German have none in English; as, *advice, counsel, business, knowledge, progress, abuse, slander, relief.* On the contrary, a still greater number, which have no plural in

German, take the plural form in English; as, *apprehensions, behaviours, censures, courses, cries, distresses, fears, healths, imaginations, lives, loves, miseries, misfortunes, splendours, tastes.*

Gender.

177. There are three genders, the *Masculine*, the *Feminine* and the *Neuter*. In English the grammatical gender of nouns agrees with their natural one, all males being masculine, all females feminine and inanimate objects neuter.

178. The word *child*, when the natural gender of the child is not expressed or known, is neuter; the smaller quadrupeds, insects, birds and fishes are generally neuter, when their gender is not specially implied. The nobler animals, such as *dog, horse, elephant, lion, whale*, are usually masculine, even when no reference is made to their natural gender.

179. In figurative language, when inanimate objects are personified, many really neuter nouns have the masculine or feminine gender attributed to them. In general it is the taste or imagination of the writer which decides the gender, as the same object is frequently found sometimes of one gender and sometimes of another. Objects which are supposed to convey an idea of strength, boldness, or energy, are usually masculine; as, *Death, Flood, Love, Oak, Sun, Terror, Thunder, Time, War, Winter.* The proper names of countries, towns and ships, and those objects which convey an idea of softness, weakness, or timidity, are usually feminine; as, *England, France, London, The Leviathan, Charity, Chastity, Church, Earth, Faith, Hope, Lily, Moon, Nature, Peace, Piety, Rose, Spring, Virtue, Wisdom* &c.

Observation. The noun *sun* is masculine, the nouns *moon* and *ship* feminine, also in familiar language.

180. Many nouns are common to both genders; as, *artist, Christian, companion, consort, cook, cousin, dancer, enemy, fool, friend, neighbour, novice, orphan, painter, parent, partner, performer, player, pilgrim, pupil, relation, rival, scholar, servant, sinner, slave, spouse, teacher, thief, witness.*

181. There are three ways of distinguishing gender.

1. By different words.

Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*
Bachelor,	Maid, Spinster.	Boy,	Girl.
Beau,	Belle.	Bridegroom,	Bride.
Boar,	Sow.	Brother,	Sister.

Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*
Buck.	Doe.	King,	Queen.
Bull.	Cow.	Lord.	Lady.
Bullock.	Heifer.	Man.	Woman.
Cock.	Hen.	Master.	Mistress.
Colt.	Filly.	Monk.	Nun.
Dog.	Bitch.	Milter.	Spawner.
Drake.	Duck.	Nephew.	Niece.
Earl.	Countess.	Ram.	Ewe.
Father.	Mother.	Sir.	Madam.
Friar.	Nun.	Sloven.	Slattern.
Gander.	Goose.	Son.	Daughter.
Gentleman.	Lady.	Stag.	Hind.
Hart.	Roe.	Uncle.	Aunt.
Horse, Stallion,	Mare.	Widower.	Widow.
		Wizard.	Witch.
Husband.	Wife.		

2. By the terminations *ess*, *ine*, *a* and *ix*, the masculine name being sometimes subject to slight changes.

Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*
Abbot.	Abbess.	Infant.	Infanta.
Actor.	Actress.	Jew.	Jewess.
Administrator.	Administratrix.	Lad.	Lass.
Adulterer.	Adulteress.	Landgrave.	Landgravine.
Ambassador.	Ambassadress.	Lion.	Lioness.
Arbiter.	Arbitress.	Margrave.	Margravine.
Author.	Authoress.	Marquis.	Marchioness.
Baron.	Baroness.	Mayor.	Mayoress.
Benefactor.	Benefactress.	Negro.	Negress.
Chantor.	Chantress.	Patron.	Patroness.
Conductor.	Conductress.	Peer.	Peeress.
Count.	Countess.	Poet.	Poetess.
Czar.	Czarina.	Priest.	Priestess.
Dauphin.	Dauphiness.	Prince.	Princess.
Deacon.	Deaconess.	Prior.	Prioress.
Director.	Directress.	Prophet.	Prophetess.
Don.	Donna.	Protector.	Protectress.
Duke.	Duchess.	Seamster.	Seamstress.
Elector.	Electress.	Shepherd.	Shepherdess.
Emperor.	Empress.	Signor.	Signora.
Enchanter.	Enchantress.	Songster.	Songstress.
Executor.	Executrix.	Sorcerer.	Sorceress.
Fornicator.	Fornicatrix.	Spectator.	Spectatress.
Giant.	Giantess.	Sultan.	Sultana.
Governor.	Governess.	Testator.	Testatrix.
Heir.	Heiress.	Tiger.	Tigress.
Heritor.	Heritrix.	Traitor.	Traitress.
Hero.	Heroine.	Tutor.	Tutoress.
Host.	Hostess.		Governess.
Hunter.	Huntress.	Viscount.	Viscountess.

3. By the addition of another word which denotes the gender. For persons are used the word *man, maid; male, female; he, she.*

A man servant.	A maid servant.
A male friend.	A female friend.
A he cousin.	A she cousin.

For animals are used *male, female; he, she; dog, bitch; buck, doe;* for birds *cock* and *hen.*

A male elephant.	A female elephant.
A he bear.	A she bear.
A he wolf.	A she wolf.
A dog fox.	A bitch fox.
A buck rabbit.	A doe rabbit.
A cock sparrow.	A hen sparrow.

182. The words which denote gender are prefixed to the substantive only, when it is absolutely necessary to express the gender; in most cases it is expressed by the name of the person, or by a pronoun; as, *She* is a faithful servant. My cousin *William.* Her friend *Caroline.* Our neighbour, *Mrs. Smith. She* was a pupil of Mozart's. Sometimes, however, the use of these words cannot be well avoided; as, I have six *male* cousins and three *female* cousins. I saw her with a friend. Was it a *male* or a *female* friend?

183. The English language has no name for the females of the different nations. When the gender is not evident from the context, the words *woman* or *lady* must be added; as, I saw a Russian lady. There were two Portugese women and one Spanish woman living in the house. But if the gender is self evident, the words *woman* or *lady* may be omitted; as, *She* is a Spaniard. *Ristori* is an Italian. With the words English, French, Scotch, Irish, Dutch, Welsh the words *woman* or *lady* must be always added; as, *She* is an Englishwoman. I saw a Dutchlady. Mrs. M. is an Irish lady.

Case.

184. In English there are, strictly speaking, but three cases, the *Nominative,* the *Possessive* or *Genitive* and the *Objective* or *Accusative.*

185. The genitive case of the singular is formed by adding *s* with an apostrophe (*'s*); as, *Wellington's* victories. *God's* goodness is great.

186. When the plural ends in *s,* the genitive is formed by adding an apostrophe after the *s;* as, Like *angels'* visits, few and far between. My *brothers'* books. If the plural does not end in *s,* the genitive is formed as in the singular; as, The *children's* bonnets. The *men's* horses.

187. Some singular nouns, which have a particularly hissing sound, form their genitive by an apostrophe only; as, *Moses'* rod. *Felix'* room. For *righteousness'* sake. For

conscience' sake. For *goodness'* sake. *Achilles'* wrath. *Ajax'* rage. *Cephisus'* stream is indeed scanty and Ilissus has no stream at all.

188. The genitive is also formed by the preposition *of;* as, The writings *of* Milton.

189. The cases of other languages are expressed in English by prepositions.

Singular.

Nominative.	Dominus.	A Lord.
Genitive.	Domini.	A Lord's, of a Lord.
Dative.	Domino.	To a Lord.
Accusative.	Dominum.	A Lord.
Vocative.	Domine.	O Lord.
Ablative.	Domino.	From or by a Lord.

Plural.

Nominative.	Domini.	Lords.
Genitive.	Dominorum.	Lords', of Lords.
Dative.	Dominis.	To Lords.
Accusative.	Dominos.	Lords.
Vocative.	Domini.	O Lords.
Ablative.	Dominis.	From or by Lords.

Adjective.

190. Adjectives have three degrees of comparison, the *Positive,* the *Comparative* and the *Superlative.*

191. Adjectives of one syllable form their comparative by adding *er,* and their superlative by adding *est* to the positive; as, *small, smaller, smallest.* If the adjective ends in *e* mute, the additional *e* is omitted; as, *wise, wiser, wisest.* Y preceded by a consonant is changed into *i;* as, *dry, drier, driest.* If the adjective ends in a single consonant, preceded by a short vowel, the consonant is doubled; as, *red, redder, reddest, big, bigger, biggest.*

192. Adjectives of two syllables, ending in *y* or *le,* form their comparative and superlative by the addition of *er* and *est;* as, *happy, happier, happiest; noble, nobler, noblest.* Also those which are accentuated on the second syllable; as, *polite, politer, politest; distinct, distincter, distinctest.*

Observation. Some other adjectives take also sometimes *er* and *est;* as, *handsome, handsomer, handsomest; cruel, crueller, cruellest; shallow, shallower, shallowest.*

193. All other adjectives, whether of two or more syllables, take *more* in the comparative, and *most* in the superla-

tive; as, *careless, more careless, most careless; ambitious, more ambitious, most ambitious.*

Observation. All adjectives *may* be compared by *more* and *most;* as, *rich, more rich, most rich; happy, more happy, most happy.*

194. The following are compared irregularly:

Good,	better,	best.
Bad,	worse,	worst.
Little,	less, lesser,	least.
Much, Many,	more,	most.

195. There are a few others, the comparatives and superlatives of which have a different signification, which will be further explained in the syntax.

Far,	farther, further,	farthest, furthest.
Fore,	former,	foremost.
Late,	later, latter,	latest, last.
Near,	nearer,	nearest, next.
Old,	older, elder,	oldest, eldest.

196. Some adjectives, dirived from prepositions, or adverbs, having in part the form of the comparative, form only a superlative and that by the addition of the word *most.*

Fore, Former,	foremost.	Outer,	outmost. outermost.
Hind, Hinder,	hindmost. hindermost.		uttermost. utmost.
Inner,	innermost. inmost.	Under,	undermost.
		Upper,	uppermost.
Lower,	lowermost.	South,	southermost.
Nether,	nethermost.	Top,	topmost.

197. The word most is used also to express merely a high degree; as, A *most* learned man. A *most* beautiful view.

198. Such adjectives as *chief, extreme, impossible, right, perfect, supreme, universel* are, strictly speaking, not subject to the degrees of comparison.

Pronoun.

199. The pronouns may be divided into eight classes; namely, *Personal, Possessive, Reflective, Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, Determinative* and *Indefinite.*

Personal Pronouns.

200. The Personal Pronouns are thus declined.

	1st Person.	*2d Person.*	*3d Person.* Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
Nom.	I,	thou,	he,	she,	it,	*Singular.*
Gen.	of me,	of thee,	of him,	of her,	of it,	
Dat.	to me,	to thee,	to him,	to her,	to it,	
Accus.	me,	thee,	him,	her,	it.	
Nom.	we,	you, ye,		they,		*Plural.*
Gen.	of us,	of you,		of them,		
Dat.	to us,	to you,		to them,		
Accus.	us,	you,		them.		

Possessive Pronouns.

201. There are two kinds of possessive Pronouns:

1. The Conjunctive Possessive Pronouns, which are thus declined.

	1st Person.	*2d Person.*	*3d Person.* Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
Nom.	my,	thy,	his,	her,	its,	*Singular.*
Gen.	of my,	of thy,	of his,	of her,	of its,	
Dat.	to my,	to thy,	to his,	to her,	to its,	
Accus.	my,	thy,	his,	her,	its.	
Nom.	our,	your,		their,		*Plural.*
Gen.	of our,	of your,		of their,		
Dat.	to our,	to your,		to their,		
Accus.	our,	your,		their.		

2. The Absolute Possessive Pronouns, which are thus declined.

	1st Person.	*2d Person.*	*3d Person.* Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
Nom.	mine,	thine,	his,	hers,	The neut. is wanting.	*Singular.*
Gen.	of mine,	of thine,	of his,	of hers,		
Dat.	to mine,	to thine,	to his,	to hers,		
Accus.	mine,	thine,	his,	hers,		
Nom.	ours,	yours,		theirs,		*Plural.*
Gen.	of ours,	of yours,		of theirs,		
Dat.	to ours,	to yours,		to theirs,		
Accus.	ours,	yours,		theirs.		

Observation. *Its* and *yours* are sometimes written *it's, your's,* but this is not correct, and should be avoided.

Reflective Pronouns.

202.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1. Person	I myself,	we ourselves.
2. Person	thou thyself, you yourself,	you yourselves.
3. Person	he himself, she herself, it itself, one one's self,	they themselves.

These pronouns are called *reflective* when used to denote that the agent which acts is also the object of the action; as, Do not praise *yourself*. *He* thinks *himself* wiser than his neighbours. *One* ought not to neglect *one's self*. *Physician*, heal *thyself*.

203. They are called *emphatic pronouns* when used merely to mark the person with greater emphasis; as, I have written on that subject *myself*. One cannot always be present *one's self*.

204. To this class also belong the *reciprocal* pronouns *each other* and *one another*, which denote the mutual action of different agents; as, Love *one another*. *Napoleon* and *Wellington* were opposed to *each other*.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

205.

Singular.	*Plural.*
this,	these.
that,	those.

These pronouns are declined with prepositions in the same manner as the possessive pronouns.

206. *The former*, *the latter*, *yon*, *yonder*, may be considered as belonging to this class, as they have the same meaning as *this* and *that;* as, Shakspeare and Schiller were both great dramatic writers, but *the former* exceeds *the latter* in his knowledge of human nature. *Yon* purple mountains, *yonder* tranquil lake.

Relative Pronouns.

207. The relative pronouns are *who*, *which* and *that*. They are of both numbers, but *who* is alone subject to change in case.

Nom.	who,	which.
Gen.	whose, / of whom,	of which.
Dat.	to whom,	to which.
Accus.	whom,	which.

208. The pronoun *what* is a compound relative meaning the same as *that which*, *the thing which;* as, We often like *what* is not good for us. Give me an account of *what* you saw in Paris.

209. From *who*, *which* and *what* are formed the compound relatives *whoever*, *whichever*, *whatever*, *whosoever*, *whichsoever*, *whatsoever*.

Interrogative Pronouns.

210. The interrogative pronouns are the same as the relative,

namely, *who? which? what?* with their compounds, *whoever, whichever &c.* Of these who alone is declined

Nom.	who?
Gen.	whose? / of whom?
Dat.	to whom?
Accus.	whom?

Determinate Pronouns.

211. These pronouns do not form in English a separate class, being composed of the personal and demonstrative pronouns.

German.	*English.*
derjenige, welcher,	he who,
diejenige, welche,	she who,
dasjenige, welches,	that which,
diejenigen, welche,	those who (of persons), / those which (of things).

Indefinite Pronouns.

212. The indefinite pronouns are

All.	Few, little.
Any, some.	Many, much.
Both.	No, none.
Each, every.	One.
Either, neither.	Other.
One of the two.	Such.

213. Of these only *one* and *other* take the sign of the genitive case; as, One ought to know *one's* own affairs best. I accepted the *one's* favours, but rejected the *other's.*
214. The article *an* when used before *other* is generally joined to it; as, Teach me to feel *another's* woe. Give me *another* cup of tea.

Verb.

215. Verbs are of three kinds, *Active, Passive* or *Transitive,* and *Neuter* or *Intransitive.*
216. Active verbs are those which, to complete the sense, require a noun or pronoun after them, which is in the accusative case and is the receiver of the action; as, The moon *sheds* her *light* over the earth.
217. Passive verbs are those which take before them a noun or pronoun in the nominative case, which is the receiver of the action and, if the sense by completed, a noun or pronoun after them, with the preposition *by;* as, The wheel *is turned by* water.
218. Neuter verbs are those, the action expressed by which

is confined to the nominative case. They require no accusative case after them, but may take a preposition; as, The sun *shines*. The stars *glitter in* the sky. He *laughed at* him.

Observation. Some verbs are both active and neuter; as, He *grieved* very much. He *grieved his friend.*

Mood.

219. There are four moods:

1. The *Indicative*, which expresses the action in a positive manner; as, *I write, I wrote, I shall write.*
2. The *Subjunctive*, which denotes an uncertainty in the future, and is always dependant on something. If it *rain* I shall not go out.
3. The *Imperative*, which commands entreats or exhorts; as, Children, *obey* your parents and teachers. *Come* to me. *Esteem* those who are honest.
4. The *Infinitive*, which expresses the action of a Verb in an indefinite manner, without regard to person, number, or tense. Its sign is the preposition *to;* as, *To err* is human, *to forgive* divine.

Tense.

220. There are three principal tenses, or times, of verbs: the *Present*, *Past* and *Future*, but others are added to mark the time more accurately. Grammarians differ as to their names, but we adopt those by which they are most generally known; as, *Present, I write; Imperfect, I wrote; Future, I shall write; Conditional, I should write;* and the compound tenses; as, *Perfect, I have written; Pluperfect, I had written; Second Future, I shall have written; Second conditional, I should have written.*

221. Verbs have also two participles; the *Present* or *Active;* as, *loving, walking;* and the *Past* or *Passive;* as, *loved, walked.*

Auxiliary Verbs.

222. The Auxiliary Verbs are those by the help of which other verbs are conjugated. They are *have, be, let, do, shall, will, may, can, must* and *ought. Have, be, let, do* and *will* are principal verbs when not joined to other verbs; as, I *have* a book, I *am* rich, *let* that alone, *do* it, he *wills. Shall, will, may, can, must* and *ought* are defective verbs, having only the present and imperfect tenses, indeed, *must* and *ought* have only a present tense. The verbs *dare* and *need* partake also of the nature of auxiliary verbs.

Conjugation of the Auxiliary and Defective Verbs.

Shall.

Present Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
I shall,	we shall.
Thou shalt,	you shall.
He shall,	they shall.

Imperfect Tense.

I should,	we should.
Thou shouldst,	you should.
He should,	they should.

Will.

Present Tense.

I will,	we will.
Thou wilt,	you will.
He will,	they will.

Imperfect Tense.

I would,	we would.
Thou wouldst,	you would.
He would,	they would.

May.

Present Tense.

I may,	we may.
Thou mayest,	you may.
He may,	they may.

Imperfect Tense.

I might,	we might.
Thou mightest,	you might.
He might,	they might.

Can.

Present Tense.

I can,	we can.
Thou canst,	you can.
He can,	they can.

Imperfect Tense.

I could,	we could.
Thou couldst,	you could.
He could,	they could.

Must.

Present Tense.

I must,	we must.
Thou must,	you must.
He must,	they must.

Ought.

Present Tense.

I ought,	we ought.
Thou oughtest,	you ought.
He ought,	they ought.

Do.

Present Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
I do,	we do.
Thou dost,	you do.
He does or doth,	they do.

Imperfect Tense.

I did,	we did.
Thou didst,	you did.
He did,	they did.

Imperative Mood.

Do.

To Have.

Infinitive Mood, To have.
Present Participle, Having.
Past Participle, Had.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

I have,	we have.
Thou hast,	you (ye) have.
He has (hath),	they have.

Imperfect Tense.

I had,	we had.
Thou hadst,	you had.
He had,	they had.

Future Tense.

I shall have,	we shall have.
Thou wilt have,	you will have.
He will have,	they will have.

Conditional Tense.

I should have,	we should have.
Thou wouldst have,	you would have.
He would have,	they would have.

Perfect Tense.

I have had,	we have had.
Thou hast had,	you have had.
He has had,	they have had.

Pluperfect Tense.

I had had,	we had had.
Thou hadst had,	you had had.
He had had,	they had had.

Second Future Tense.

I shall have had,	we shall have had.
Thou wilt have had,	you will have had.
He will have had,	they will have had.

Second Conditional Tense.

I should have had,	we should have had.
Thou wouldst have had,	you would have had.
He would have had,	they would have had.

Imperative Mood.

Have.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
I have,	we have.
Thou have,	you have.
He have,	they have.

To Be.

Infinitive Mood, To be.
Present Participle, Being.
Past Participle, Been.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

I am,	we are.
Thou art,	you are.
He is,	they are.

Imperfect Tense.

I was,	we were.
Thou wast,	you were.
He was,	they were.

Future Tense.

I shall be,	we shall be.
Thou wilt be,	you will be.
He will be,	they will be.

Conditional Tense.

I should be,	we should be.
Thou wouldst be,	you would be.
He would be,	they would be.

Perfect Tense.

I have been,	we have been.
Thou hast been,	you have been.
He has been,	they have been.

Pluperfect Tense.

I had been,	we had been.
Thou hadst been,	you had been.
He had been,	they had been.

Second Future Tense.

I shall have been,	we shall have been.
Thou wilt have been,	you will have been.
He will have been,	they will have been.

Second Conditional Tense.

I should have been,	we should have been.
Thou wouldst have been,	you would have been.
He would have been,	they would have been.

Imperative Mood.

Be.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

I be,	we be.
Thou be,	you be.
He be,	they be.

Imperfect Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
I were,	we were.
Thou wert,	you were.
He were,	they were.

Regular Verbs.

223. The Present Tense of the Indicative, of all verbs except the auxiliaries, is formed from the Infinitive by adding *est* in the second and *s* in the third person; as, I call, thou *callest*, he *calls*, we call, you call, they call.

224. The Imperfect Tense of the regular verbs is formed by adding ed to the verb in all persons except the second Person singular, which takes edst; as, I *called*, thou *calledst*, he *called*, we *called*, you *called*, they *called*.

225. The following variations take place in the formation of the Present and Imperfect Tenses:

1. If the verb ends in *e* mute, only *st, d, dst* are added; as, I love, thou *lovest*, he loves, I *loved*, thou *lovedst*.
2. If the verb ends in *ch* soft, *sh, ss, x, z* or single *o*, then *es* is added to the third person singular of the present tense; as, He *preaches*, she *wishes*, he *dresses*, he *boxes*, it *buzzes*, he *goes*.
3. If the verb ends in *y* preceded by a consonant, the *y* is changed into *ie* in all cases where the verb requires a change; as, I try, thou triest, he *tries*, I *tried*, thou *triedst*, I have *tried*.
4. Verbs of one syllable, also verbs of two syllables when the accent is upon the second, double the final consonant in the second person singular of the Present, and in all persons of the Imperfect Tense, provided the preceding vowel in short; as, I beg, thou *beggest*, he *begged;* I refer, thou *referrest*, he *referred*.

226. Formerly the third person singular of the present tense, ended in *th* or *eth*, and this termination is still frequently used in poetry; as, As the hart *panteth* after the water-brooks, so *doth* my soul after Thee.

> The quality of mercy is not strained:
> It *droppeth* as the gentle rain from heaven
> Upon the place beneath. It is twice blessed;
> It *blesseth* him that gives and him that takes.

227. The Future Tense is formed by the auxiliary verbs *shall* and *will*, and the Conditional Tense by *should* and *would; shall* and *should* being used in the first person and *will* and *would* in the second and third.

228. The Imperative Mood is formed from the Infinitive by leaving out the preposition *to;* as, *Rise* early. *Depart* immediately.

229. The Subjunctive Mood is formed from the Infinitive by substituting the suitable pronouns for the preposition *to*.

230. The Present Participle is formed by adding *ing* to the

verb, omitting the final *e* when there is one; as, To laugh, *laughing*. To love, *loving*.

231. The Past Participle is formed by adding *d* or *ed* to the verb; as, To call, *called;* to love, *loved*.

232. The following variations take place in the formation of the participles.

1. Syllables ending in accented *e* or *ee*, do not lose the *e;* as, Be, *being;* free, *freeing;* see, *seeing*.
2. *Ie* is changed into *y* to form the Present Participle; as, Lie, *lying*, die, *dying*. *Dycing* which means *to colour*, retains the *e* to distinguish it from *dying*.
3. The final consonant is doubled under the conditions mentioned in rule 225—4; as, Beg, *begged, begging;* prefer, *preferred, preferring*.

Conjugation of a Regular Verb.

Infinitive Mood, To love,
Present Participle, Loving.
Past Participle, Loved.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
I love,	we love.
Thou lovest,	you (ye) love.
He loves (loveth),	they love.

Imperfect Tense.

I loved,	we loved,
Thou lovedst,	you loved.
He loved,	they loved.

Future Tense.

I shall love,	we shall love.
Thou wilt love,	you will love.
He will love,	they will love.

Conditional Tense.

I should love,	we should love.
Thou wouldst love,	you would love.
He would love,	they would love.

Perfect Tense.

I have loved,	we have loved.
Thou hast loved,	you have loved.
He has loved,	they have loved.

Pluperfect Tense.

I had loved,	we had loved.
Thou hadst loved,	you had loved.
He had loved,	they had loved.

Second Future Tense.

I shall have loved,	we shall have loved.
Thou wilt have loved,	you will have loved.
He will have loved,	they will have loved.

Second Conditional Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
I should have loved,	we should have loved.
Thou wouldst have loved,	you would have loved.
He would have loved,	they would have loved.

Imperative Mood.

Love.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

I love,	we love.
Thou love,	you love.
He love,	they love.

233. Passive verbs are formed from active verbs by adding the past participle to the auxiliary verb to be, through all its changes; as, To be *loved*, being *loved*, been *loved*, I am *loved*, I was *loved*, I shall be *loved*, I should be *loved*, I have been *loved*, I had been *loved*, I shall have been *loved*, I should have been *loved*.

234. Impersonal verbs are those which are used only in the third person with the pronoun *it;* as, *It snows. It rained. It will freeze.*

Irregular Verbs.

235. The Irregular Verbs are such as form their imperfect tense and past participle in a different manner from the regular verbs, no other part of the verb being irregular. The following is a complete list of them, in which also the defective verbs are included. Those marked with R. are also conjugated regularly.

In the Imperfect no change takes place to mark the person, except the addition of *st* or *est* to the second person, which is, however, very seldom used; as, I abode, thou *abodest,* he abode, we abode, you abode, they abode.

Present.	*Imperfect.*	*Participle.*
Abide,	abode,	abode.
Am,	was,	been.
Arise,	arose,	arisen.
Awake,	awoke, R.,	awaked.
Bear (to carry),	bore,	borne.
Bear (to bring forth),	bore, bare,	{born (passive). borne (active).
Beat,	beat,	beaten.
Become,	became,	become.
Befalls,	befell,	befallen.
Beget,	begot,	begotten.
Begin,	began,	begun.

Present.	*Imperfect.*	*Participle.*
Begird,	begirt, R.,	begirt, R.
Behold,	beheld,	beheld.
Bend,	bent, R.,	bent, R.
Bereave,	bereft, R.,	bereft, R.
Beseech,	besought,	besought.
Bestride,	bestrode,	bestridden.
Betake,	betook,	betaken.
Bid,	bid, bade,	bidden, bid.
Bind,	bound,	bound.
Bite,	bit,	bitten, bit.
Bleed,	bled,	bled.
Blow,	blew,	blown.
Break,	broke, brake,	broken.
Breed,	bred,	bred.
Bring,	brought,	brought.
Build,	built,	built.
Burst,	burst,	burst.
Buy,	bought,	bought.
Can,	could,	
Cast,	cast,	cast.
Catch,	caught,	caught.
Chide,	chid,	chidden, chid.
Choose,	chose,	chosen.
Cleave (to adhere),	clave, R.,	cleaved.
Cleave (to split),	clove, cleft,	cloven, cleft.
Climb,	clomb, R.,	climbed.
Cling,	clung,	clung.
Clothe,	clad, R.,	clad, R.
Come,	came,	come.
Cost,	cost,	cost.
Creep,	crept,	crept.
Crow,	crew, R.,	crowed.
Cut,	cut,	cut.
Dare,	durst, R.,	dared.
Deal,	dealt, R.,	dealt, R.
Dig,	dug, R.,	dug, R.
Do,	did,	done.
Draw,	drew,	drawn.
Dream,	dreamt, R.,	dreamt, R.
Drink,	drank,	drunk.
Drive,	drove,	driven.
Dwell,	dwelt, R.,	dwelt, R.
Eat,	eat, ate,	eaten.
Fall,	fell,	fallen.
Feed,	fed,	fed.
Feel,	felt,	felt.
Fight,	fought,	fought.
Find,	found,	found.
Flee,	fled,	fled.
Fling,	flung,	flung.
Fly,	flew,	flown.
Forbear,	forbore,	forborn.
Forbid,	forbid, forbade,	forbidden, forbid.
Forget,	forgot,	forgotten.
Forgive,	forgave,	forgiven.
Forsake,	forsook,	forsaken.
Freeze,	froze,	frozen.

Present.	*Imperfect.*	*Participle.*
Get,	got,	got.
Gild,	gilt, R.,	gilt, R.
Gird,	girt, R.,	girt, R.
Give,	gave,	given.
Go,	went,	gone.
Grave,	graved,	graven.
Grind.	ground,	ground.
Grow,	grew,	grown.
Hang,	hung, R.,	hung, R.
Have,	had,	had.
Hear,	heard,	heard.
Heave,	hove, R.,	hove, R.
Hew,	hewed,	hewn, R.
Hide,	hid,	hidden.
Hit,	hit,	hit.
Hold,	held,	held.
Hurt,	hurt,	hurt.
Keep,	kept,	kept.
Kneel,	knelt, R.,	knelt, R.
Knit,	knit, R.,	knit, R.
Know,	knew,	known.
Lade,	laded,	laden,
Lay,	laid,	laid.
Lead,	led,	led.
Lean,	leant, R.,	leant, R.
Leap,	leapt, R.,	leapt, R.
Leave,	left,	left.
Lend,	lent,	lent.
Let,	let,	let.
Lie (to lie down),	lay,	lain.
Light,	lit, R.,	lit, R.
Load,	loaded,	laden, R.
Lose,	lost,	lost.
Make,	made,	made.
May,	might,	
Mean,	meant, R.,	meant, R.
Meet,	met,	met.
Melt,	melted,	molten, R.
Mistake,	mistook,	mistaken.
Mow,	mowed,	mown, R.
Must,		
Ought,		
Partake,	partook,	partaken.
Pay,	paid,	paid,
Pen (to enclose),	pent,	pent.
Put,	put,	put.
Quit,	quit, R.,	quit, R.
	quoth he,	
Read,	read,	read.
Rend,	rent,	rent.
Rid,	rid,	rid.
Ride,	rode,	ridden.
Ring,	rang,	rung.
Rise,	rose,	risen.
Rive,	rived,	riven.
Run,	ran,	run.
Saw,	sawed,	sawn.

Present.	*Imperfect.*	*Participle.*
Say,	said,	said.
See,	saw,	seen.
Seek,	sought,	sought.
Seethe,	sod, R.,	sodden, R.
Sell,	sold,	sold.
Send,	sent,	sent.
Set,	set,	set.
Shake,	shook,	shaken.
Shall,	should.	
Shape,	shaped,	shapen, R.
Shave,	shaved,	shaven, R.
Shear,	shore,	shorn.
Shed,	shed,	shed.
Show (shew),	showed (shewed),	shown (shewn).
Shine,	shone,	shone.
Shoe,	shod,	shod.
Shoot,	shot,	shot.
Shred,	shred,	shred.
Shrink,	shrank,	shrunk.
Shrive,	shrove,	shriven.
Shut,	shut,	shut.
Sing,	sang,	sung.
Sink,	sank,	sunk.
Sit,	sat, sate,	sat.
Slay,	slew,	slain.
Sleep,	slept,	slept.
Slide,	slid,	slidden.
Sling,	slung,	slung.
Slit,	slit,	slit.
Smell,	smelt, R.,	smelt, R.
Smite,	smote,	smitten.
Sow,	sowed,	sown.
Speak,	spoke, spake,	spoken.
Speed,	sped,	sped.
Spend,	spent,	spent.
Spill,	spilt, R.,	spilt, R.
Spin,	spun,	spun.
Spit,	spit, spat,	spitten, spit.
Split,	split,	split.
Spread,	spread,	spread.
Spring,	sprang,	sprung.
Stand,	stood,	stood.
Stave,	stove, R.,	stove, R.
Steal,	stole,	stolen.
Stick,	stuck,	stuck.
Sting,	stung,	stung.
Stink,	stank, stunk,	stunk.
Stride,	strode,	stridden.
Strike,	struck,	struck.
String,	strung,	strung.
Strive,	strove,	striven.
Strow (strew),	strowed (strewed),	strown (strewn).
Swear,	swore, sware,	sworn.
Sweat,	sweat, R.,	sweat, R.
Sweep,	swept,	swept.
Swell,	swelled,	swollen.
Swim,	swam,	swum.

Present.	*Imperfect.*	*Participle.*
Swing,	swung,	swung.
Take,	took,	taken.
Teach,	taught,	taught.
Tear,	tore,	torn.
Tell,	told,	told.
Think,	thought,	thought.
Thrive,	throve, R.,	thriven, R.
Throw,	threw,	thrown.
Thrust,	thrust,	thrust.
Tread,	trod,	trodden.
Wax,	waxed,	waxen, R.
Wear,	wore,	worn.
Weave,	wove,	woven.
Weep,	wept,	wept.
Will,	would,	
Wind,	wound,	wound.
Win, to Wit.	won,	won.
Work,	wrought, R.,	wrought, R.
Wring,	wrung, R.,	wrung, R.
Write,	wrote,	written.

Adverb.

236. Adverbs may be divided into at least seven classes.

1. *Adverbs of Place.* Aboard, about, above, abroad, afar, afield, aground, along, amongst, anywhere, around, ashore, astray, away, back, backwards, before, behind, below, beneath, by, down, downwards, east, eastwards, everywhere, elsewhere, far, forth, forwards, hence, here, home, in, inside, inwards, left, near, north, northwards, nowhere, off, on, onwards, out, outside, outwards, over, right, sideways, somewhere, south, southwards, thence, there, thither, under, underneath, up, upwards, west, westwards, whence, where, wherever, within, without.
2. *Adverbs of Time.* A. *Indefinite.* Afterwards, already, always, awhile, commonly, continually, directly, early, eternally, ever, frequently, formerly, generally, henceforth, hereafter, heretofore, immediately, incessantly, instantly, lately, never, now, occasionally, oft, often, once, perpetually, presently, quickly, rarely, seldom, sometimes, shortly, since, speedily, still, till, then, when, while, whilst, yet.

   B. *Definite.* Being for the most part adverbial phrases. Ago, after to-morrow, anon, as yet, another time, at present, at once, a year ago, before, beforehand, betimes, by day, by and by, daily, ere now, ere long, ever and anon, ever since, every other day, for ever, for the future, hourly, in former times, in future, in the mean time, just now, last night, last week, long ago, monthly, next week, no more, no longer, now a days, now and then, not yet, of old, of late, one day, one day or other, some time ago, some of these days, soon after, the day before yesterday, the other day, this day week, to-day, to-morrow, to-morrow morning, to-night, too soon, too early, too late, weekly, yesterday, yesterday morning, yesterday evening.
3. *Adverbs of Manner.* They are mostly formed from adjectives by the addition of ly. Aloud, alternately, audaciously, beautifully, better, best, bitterly, divinely, extremely, fast, fluently, gloriously, hard, ill, kindly, loud, minutely, nicely, patiently, politely, prettily, quickly, richly, sincerely, softly, stupidly, sweetly, tenderly, thoroughly, well, wisely.

4. *Adverbs of degree.* Abundantly, almost, chiefly, completely, entirely, equally, even, faintly, fairly, far, fully, greatly, hardly, highly, least, less, little, much, nearly, pretty, quite, rather, scarcely, too, utterly, very, wholly.
5. *Adverbs of affirmation, negation* and *doubt.* Aye, at all events, by all means, by no means, certainly; doubtless, faith, indeed, in fact, likely, needs, neither, no, no doubt, nor, not, not at all, of course, perchance, perhaps, possibly, probably, really, surely, to be sure, truly, verily, yea, yes.
6. *Adverbs of Order* and *Number.* Once, twice, thrice, three times, four times, at once, first, firstly, at first, secondly, thirdly, fourthly, lastly, at last, before, before all, next, then, afterwards, by turns, one by one, hereupon, whereupon.
7. *Adverbs of Interrogation.* How, how often, how many times, when, where, whither, why, why so, wherefore, whence, what for.

237. A great many adverbs are formed from adjectives by adding *ly;* as, sudden, *suddenly;* nice, *nicely;* high, *highly.* In their formation the following variations take place.

1. Adjectives ending in *y* change *y* into *i;* as, sly, *slily;* gay, *gaily;* happy, *happily;* merry, *merrily.*
2. Adjectives ending in *le* after a consonant change *e* into *y;* as, idle, *idly;* noble, *nobly;* able, *ably;* incomprehensible, *incomprehensibly.*
3. Adjectives ending in *ll* take *y* after them; as, dull, *dully;* full, *fully.*
4. *True, due, whole* make *truly, duly, wholly.*

Some adverbs are formed by the addition of the terminations *ward* or *wards,* which denote motion towards a place; as, *eastward, windward, forward, homewards, backwards, forwards.*

The adverbs *here, there, where* form other adverbs by the addition of a preposition; as, *hereby, herewith, hereto, thereby, thereupon, therewith, whereof, whereby, wherein.*

Many adverbs are formed from nouns and adjectives by prefixing *a,* which is a corruption of the prepositions *at* or *on;* as, *aside, aboard, ashore, afloat, afoot, ajar, alive, aloft, along, apart, around, aslope, athwart, awry.*

238. Adjectives ending in *ly* are seldom formed into adverbs; as, *lovely, friendly, brotherly, godly, heavenly, fatherly.* A few adjectives in *ly* are used as adverbs without further change; as, *early, daily, hourly, weekly.*

239. Those adverbs which are subject to the degrees of comparison, are compared in the same manner as adjectives; as, *soon, sooner, soonest; early, earlier, earliest; beautifully, more beautifully, most beautifully.*

Observation. All adverbs formed by the addition of *ly* to an adjective are compared by *more* and *most* even when but of two syllables; as, *wisely, more wisely, most wisely.*

Preposition.

240. The following are the principal English Prepositions.

About.	Between.	Over.
Above.	Betwixt.	Regarding.
According to.	Beyond.	Respecting.
Across.	By.	Round.
After.	Concerning.	Save.
Against.	Down.	Since.
Along.	During.	Through.
Amid.	Except.	Throughout.
Amidst.	Excepting.	To.
Among.	For.	Touching.
Amongst.	From.	Towards.
Around.	In.	Under.
At.	Into.	Underneath.
Athwart.	Instead of.	Unto.
Before.	Near.	Up.
Behind.	Nigh.	Upon.
Below.	Of.	With.
Beneath.	Off.	Within.
Beside.	On.	Without.
Besides.	Out of.	

There are also some phrases which have the power of prepositions; as, by the side of, by dint of, by reason of, by means of, for the sake of, for want of, in front of, in presence of, in spite of, in despite of, in place of, in consequence of, on this side, on account of, with respect to, with regard to, opposite to.

Conjunction.

241. The following is a list of the principal conjunctions.

Again.	For.	Still.
Albeit.	Furthermore.	Than.
Also.	However.	That.
And.	If.	Then.
As.	Lest.	Therefore.
As — as.	Likewise.	Thereupon.
As — also.	Moreover.	Though.
As — so.	Neither — nor.	Too.
Because.	Nevertheless.	Unless.
Before.	Nor.	What — what.
Besides.	Notwithstanding.	When.
Both — and.	Or.	Whence.
But.	Or else.	Whereas.
Consequently.	Provided.	Wherefore.
Either — or.	Rather.	Whether.
Else.	Save.	Whereupon.
Ere.	Seeing.	While.
Except.	Since.	Whilst.
Even.	So — as.	Without.
Finally.	So — that.	Yet.

There are also conjunctional phrases; as, As if, as well as, for as much as, as though, as soon as, for all that, in the meanwhile, not only — but also.

Interjection.

242. The following are the principal kinds of Interjections.

1. Of approbation and encouragement; *courage! bravo! hear! well done! capital!*
2. Of pain and sorrow; *O dear! ah! alas! ah me! oh!*
3. Of wonder; *ha! good gracious! gracious heavens! what! indeed! really! wonderful! ha!*
4. Of disgust and contempt; *fie! fy! foh! fudge! pooh! pish! pshaw! wheugh!*
5. Of joy and exaltation; *hey! hey day! hurrah! huzza!*
6. Of threatening; *avaunt! begone!*
7. Of warning; *beware! ware! take care! mind! look out!*
8. Of commanding silence; *silence! hush! hist! hark! peace!*
9. Of doubt; *hm! humph! hum!*
10. Of calling aloud; *ho! holla! soho!*
11. Of calling attention; *lo! look! behold! see! I say!*
12. Of fatigue; *heigho!*
13. Of welcome; *hail! welcome!*

The Formation of Words.

243. All words are either *roots* which cannot be traced to any simpler word, or are derived from roots, either by a change of letters; as, *strike, struck,* or by adding *prefixes* and *affixes,* or terminations; as, *manhood, woodman.*

Pure English or Saxon Prefixes.

244. *A* (at, to, on), ahead, afoot, ashore, ajar, alive.
Be (the verb *to be*), befriend, betoken, beside, beneath.
For, fore (negative) forbid, forget, forgive, forlorn.
Fore (before), foretel, foresee, foremost, foreground.
Gain (against), gainsay.
Mis (implies wrongness), mistake, mislead, misconduct.
Out (beyond), outgrow, outlive, outrun, outdo.
Over (above, beyond), overbear, overdo, overcome.
To (this), to-day, to-night, to-morrow.
Un (not), undo, unspeakable, unwise, unwilling.
Up (motion upwards), uphold, upbraid, upstart, upright.
With (from, against), withdraw, withstand.

Latin Prefixes.

245. *A, ab, abs* (from) avert, abuse, absolve, abstain.

The final letter of a prefix is often, for the sake of euphony, changed into the initial letter of the word to which it is added.

Ad, ac, af, ag, al, an, ap, ar, as, at (to), advert, adverb, accede, affix, aggression, allude, annex, appear, arrogate, assent, attract.

Ante, anti (before), antedate, anticipate, antecedent.

Bis bi (two), bissextile, bisect, biped, bigamy.

Circum, circu (round), circumvent, circulate, circuit.

Con, co, cog, col, com, cor (with), confide, concourse, coheir, cognate, collect, compress, corrupt.

Contra, counter (against), contradict, counteract.

De (down, from), descend, depart, deviate, detain.

Dis, dif, di (apart, asunder), disjoin, dismember, differ, dilate.

E, ex (out), eject, exclude, exceed.

Extra (beyond), extravagant, extraordinary.

In, im, il, ir, before a verb, (in) insert, inject, impel, illapse, irradiate.

In, im, il, ir, before an adjective or noun, (not) infirm, injustice, imprudent, illegal, irreligion.

Inter (between), intercede, intervene, intercept.

Intro (to, within), introduce, introvert, introgression.

Ob, o, oc, of, op (against), obstacle, object, omit, occur, offer, oppose.

Per, pel, (through), perfect, pervade, pellucid.

Post (after), postpone, postscript.

Prae, pre (before), precede, predict, prefix.

Praeter, preter (past), preternatural.

Pro (forth, for), protrude, project, pronoun.

Re (back, again), repel, reform, remodel.

Retro (backwards), retrograde, retrospect.

Se (apart, aside), secede, seduce, seduction.

Sub, suc, suf, sug, sup, sus, (under) subscribe, subterranean, succour, suffer, suggest, suspend.

Subter (underneath), subterfuge.

Super (over, above), superfluous, supernumerary.

Trans (beyond), transport, translate.

Ultra (beyond), ultramarine, ultramontane.

Greek Prefixes.

246. *A, an* (not, without), apathy, anarchy, anonymous.

Amphi (both, two), amphibious, amphitheatre.

Ana (again, back), anabaptist, analyse, anatomy.

Anti (against), antidote, antipathy, antipodes.

Apo (from) apology, apostate, apostle.
Auto (self) autograph, autobiography.
Cata (down) cataract, catastrophe, catacomb.
Dia (through) diameter, diagonal, dialogue.
Epi (upon) epitaph, epidemic, epilogue.
Ex (out) exodus, exorcise, exotic.
Hyper (over), hyperbole, hypercritical.
Hypo (under), hypocrite, hyphen, hypothesis.
Meta (beyond), metamorphosis, metaphysics.
Para (beside, from), paraphrase, parasol, paradox.
Peri (round), periphery, perigee, periphrase.
Syn, sym, syl (with), syntax, sympathy, syllable.

French Prefixes.

247. *En, em* (to make), enable, ennoble, enrage, empower, empoverish.

Pur (for), pursue, purloin, purvey.
Sur (on, above), surcharge, surmount, surpass, survive

English Affixes or Terminations.

248. Nouns denoting persons are formed by the following terminations.

Ar, beggar, liar.
Ard, drunkard, niggard, sluggard, braggard.
Er, planter, printer, writer, betrayer.
Or, actor, professor, protector.
Ster, punster, youngster, gamester.
Yer, lawyer, sawyer, bowyer.

249. Abstract nouns are formed by

Dom, kingdom, earldom, freedom, thraldom.
Ery, knavery, cookery, mockery, slavery.
Hood, head, manhood, boyhood, priesthood, Godhead, maidenhead.
Ing, reading, writing, sleeping, walking.
Lock, ledge, wedlock, knowledge.
Ness, darkness, greatness, kindness, whiteness.
Red, hatred, kindred.
Ship, friendship, hardship, lordship, fellowship.
Th, t, length, strength, truth, growth, might, flight.
Ter, laughter, slaughter.

250. Many nouns are formed also by the following terminations.

El, shovel, swivel, kernel, satchel.
En, maiden, warden, burthen, token.

Et, hatchet, pocket, latchet, ticket, casket.
Le, girdle, bundle, spindle, thimble.
Ow, shadow, meadow, window, sorrow.

251. Diminutives are formed by

Kin, lambkin, pipkin, napkin, manikin.
Let, streamlet, ringlet, brooklet.
Ling, darling, gosling, duckling, sapling.
Ock, hillock, bullock.

Verbs are formed by the terminations

En, weaken, strengthen, darken, whiten.
Er, glimmer, wonder, clamber, waver.
Ish, burnish, publish, furnish.
Le, handle, crumble, stumble, ramble.
Y, worry, sully, bully.

252. Adjectives are formed by the terminations

Ed, wretched, ragged, left-handed, wicked, dogged.
En, silken, golden, brazen, wooden, sullen.
Erly, northerly, southerly, easterly, westerly.
Ern, northern, southern, eastern, western.
Fold, fourfold, hundredfold, manifold.
Ful, fearful, wasteful, dreadful, fruitful.
Ish, blackish, slavish, thievish.
Less, worthless, careless, senseless, harmless.
Like, godlike, ladylike, warlike.
Ly, manly, sisterly, ghostly, portly, friendly.
Some, handsome, troublesome, venturesome.
Th, fourth, fifth.
Ty, lofty, thrifty, dainty, petty.
Ward, backward, forward, awkward, froward.

253. Adverbs are formed by

Ce, once, twice, thrice.
Ly, badly, nobly, patiently, violently.
Ward, wards, backwards, homewards, upwards.
Wise, nowise, otherwise, lengthwise, likewise.

Latin Terminations.

254. Nouns are formed by the terminations

Acy, conspiracy, legacy, fallacy, celibacy.
Ence, Ance, dependence, tendence, vigilance, penance.
Ice, justice, notice, practice.
Ion, region, fluxion, connexion.
Ment, monument, contentment, acknowledgment.
Mony, acrimony, matrimony, patrimony.
Our, or, ardour, honour, error, horror.
Sion, extension, evasion, version.

Sor, sponsor, incisor, supervisor.
Tion, action, motion, vexation, revolution.
Tor, rector, juror, gladiator.
Tude, latitude, fortitude, multitude.
Ty, *ity*, safety, dignity, absurdity.
Ure, pleasure, exposure, picture, capture.

255. Diminutives are formed by

Aster, poetaster, politicaster.
Cule, animalcule, macule.
Icle, particle, vehicle, icicle, pellicle.
Ule, *Ula*, globule, formula.

256. Adjectives are formed by

Aceous, crustaceous, herbaceous.
Al, regal, natural, ducal.
Ane, *ene*, *ine*, mundane, terrene, marine, saline.
Ant, *ent*, dependant, attendant, ardent, prudent.
Ary, auxiliary, military, solitary.
Ferous, somniferous, odoriferous.
Ian, *an*, Christian, agrarian, sylvan.
Ible, edible, flexible, visible, sensible.
Ic, *ical*, comic, public, comical, clerical.
Id, timid, stupid, horrid, placid, pallid.
Il, *ile*, *tile*, civil, servile, futile, volatile.
Olent, *ulent*, violent, redolent, turbulent.
Ose, verbose, jocose, morose.
Ous, dangerous, bilious, ambitious, vitreous.
Ple, triple, quadruple, simple.
Tive, *sive*, active, captive, delusive, submissive.
Tory, *sory*, migratory, amatory, cursory, illusory.

Greek Terminations.

257. Verbs are formed by

Ize, *ise*, criticize, fertilize, exercise.

Nouns are formed by

Ad, Iliad, myriad.
Ic, *ics*, *tic*, *tics*, rhetoric, arithmetic, physics, optics.
Isk, asterisk, obelisk.
Ism, magnetism, sophism, judaism.
Ist, sophist, botanist, linguist.
Ma, Panorama, dilemma.
Sis, crisis, emphasis, thesis.
Y, *e*, anatomy, monarchy, epitome, catastrophe.

French Terminations.

258.

Age, herbage, pasturage, tonnage.
Ee, assignee, lessee, trustee, committee.
Ier, eer, cavalier, cashier, mountaineer, muleteer.

The Formation of Compound Words.

259. Compound words are those which are formed of two or more distinct words; as, *boatman, handicraftsman, gun-cotton.*

260. Nearly all the different parts of speech enter into the composition of compound words.

Noun and Noun, — bookseller, alehouse, horse-shoe.
Adjective and Noun, — blackbird, safeguard, new-year.
Number and Noun, — twelvemonth, fortnight, hundred-weight.
Verb and Noun, — cut-throut, draw-bridge.
Participle and Noun, — dancing-master, resting-place.
Pronoun and Noun, — he-wolf, she-wolf.
Adverb and Noun, — downfall, outcast.
Noun and Adjective, — sea-sick, knight-errant.
Adjective and Adjective, — light-brown, red-hot.
Noun and Participle, — heart-rending, eagle-eyed.
Adjective and Participle, — old-fashioned, high-born.
Adverb and Participle, — ill-bred, well-meaning.
Adverb and Adverb, — hereafter, whereabout.
Noun and Verb, — brow-beat, henpeck.
Adjective and Verb, — new-model, rough-cast.
Noun and preposition, — hanger-on, whipper-in.

261. A great many compound words, especially those composed of monosyllables, are written as inseparable words, the two words being so thoroughly incorporated that the second has entirely lost its accent in pronunciation, as, book'seller, plough'boy, in'land.

262. When each word is accentuated, they are separated by a hyphen (-); as, mas'ter-min'd, drink'ing-son'g, wri'ting-case, panic-struck.

Syntax.

263. Syntax treats of the agreement of words with each other, and their proper arrangement in sentences.

264. There are four kinds of sentences:

1. *Simple Sentences,* which contain only one verb that is subject to changes in number and person.

   Time *flies.* Industry and perseverance *surmounted* all difficulties. I *hope* to see him.

2. *Compound Sentences,* which contain two or more simple sentences, and consequently more than one verb.

   Hannibal *was defeated* by the Romans, and *was driven* out of Italy. The ox *knoweth* his owner, and the ass his master's crib; but Israel doth not *know,* my people do not *consider.*

3. *Principal Sentences,* which are complete in themselves, and not dependant on other sentences.

   I went to London. Study the subject thoroughly.

4. *Accessory Sentences,* which are dependant on other sentences.

   I went to London, *that I might have a personal interview with him.* Study the subject thoroughly, *if you do not wish to be accounted superficial.*

265. Sentences are composed of three principal parts:

1. *The Subject,* being that of which we speak. It is always in the nominative case.

   The *boy* fell. *Gold* is heavy. *The army* gained a victory. *Six* and *three* make nine. *The wise* despise the foolish. *Enough* is enough. *It* is my brother. *To talk* is easy, *to think* is more difficult. *Gaming* is a hateful vice. *The* is called the definite article. *Well begun* is half done.

2. *The Predicate,* being that which we assert of the subject. It is either a verb alone, or a noun, pronoun, or adjective, joined to the verb to be, or to certain other verbs called copulative verbs.

   The boy *fell.* She *will repent.* His father *was a merchant.* It *is I.* She *was diligent.* He *was born a prince.* You *seem tired.* Caesar *became dictator.*

3. *The Object,* being that which the verb acts upon. It is either direct, or preceded by a preposition, and is always in the accusative.

   The boy threw *the stone.* Humility disarms *envy.* I proved *him a traitor.* Your observing *this rule* will enable you to avoid *mistakes.* I have not seen *either.* I like *hunting.* I spoke *of him.* The book belongs *to me.*

Articles.

266. The Definite Article *the* is employed:

1. When a noun is not used in a general sense, but is distinguished from other nouns of a similar kind either by an adjective, a relative pronoun, the preposition *of*, or the genitive case.

I bought *the black* horse, not *the white* one. *The elder* Pliny. *The fine* arts. *The twelve* Caesars. George *the third*. *The Low* Countries. *The East* Indies. *The* men *whom* I saw. *The* boy *that* came. *The* time *of* youth is the time *of* learning. What can there be so likely to sober a young writer as *the* reading *of* a page in Tacitus or Sallust? He is *the* Virgil *of* our age. *The* Venus *of* Titian. *The man's* horse. *The great* Corneille astonishes by beauties of the first order, and by faults of the worst taste. *The tender* Racine does not often rise so high, but is more equal.

2. When the words which serve to determine the object spoken of are not expressed, but understood.

The grass is green. *The wheat* looks well. Send for *the carpenter*. I was there at *the time*. *The queen* is beloved. I went to *the exchange* and *the museum*. *The mind* and body must be in continual exercise. It appeals neither to *the understanding* nor to *the imagination*. *The body* is the seat of punishment, *the mind* of transgression. Grief certainly softens *the heart*. *The soul* may be compared to a linen cloth; it must first be washed to make it white, and afterwards washed from time to time to keep it white. Poetry is the art of employing words so as to produce an illusion on *the imagination*.

Observation. In the above examples some particular object is referred to, as for example: The grass or wheat which we are looking at; the museum in London; the time when the event happened; the mind, body understanding, imagination, heart of man.

3. Before certain nouns of which there exists but that particular one spoken of; as, *The sun, the moon, the stars, the earth, the sky, the world, the zodiac, the pole, the equator, the nadir, the zenith, the horizon, the ecliptic, the globe, the ocean, the atmosphere, the east, the west, the north, the south, the devil, the bible, the koran, the universe.*

The equator is a great circle of *the earth*, equidistant from the poles. *The meridian* is divided into 360 equal parts. *The zodiac*, on the celestial globe, is a space which extends about eight degrees on each side of *the ecliptic*. The zenith is a point exactly over our heads, and *the nadir* exactly under our feet. *The sun* is the fountain of light that illuminates *the world*. „You have the eyes of a gazelle," is considered all over *the East* as the greatest compliment that can be paid to a woman. Byron called Scott the Ariosto of *the North*. *The sun, the moon,* and *the stars* are the glory of nature. France is bounded on *the south* by the Pyrenees and the Mediterranean, on *the east* by Switzerland and Savoy, on *the north* by the Netherlands, and on *the west* by *the ocean*.

4. Before proper nouns in the plural; as, *the Alps, the Pyrenees, the Andes, the Apennines, the Netherlands, the Indies, the Brazils, the Vosges, the Orkneys, the Canaries,*

the Maldives, the Stuarts, the Bourbons. To this rule belong the names of nations, sects and parties, when the whole of the individuals composing them are meant; as, *The English, the French, the Germans, the Turks, the Catholics, the Protestants, the Stoics, the Whigs, the Tories, the Cavaliers, the Roundheads, the Scribes, the Pharisees.*

The Alps divide Italy from France, Switzerland und Germany. Cotopaxi is the highest volcano of *the Andes. The Orkneys* remained subject to the kings of Norway and Denmark till the year 1468. The Rhine enters *the Netherlands* at Lobith. The ancestor of *the Bourbons* was Robert, youngest son of Louis 9, commonly called St. Louis. *The Indians, the Chinese, the Chaldeans, the Arabians, the Egyptians, the Phoenicians* have respectively their pretensions to the honor of having invented letters. *The Puritans* espoused the cause of civil liberty. The zeal of *the Catholics* was directed against *the Protestants,* that of *the Protestants* principally against each other.

5. Before the proper names of rivers, seas, ships, inns, buildings and newspapers.

The snow clad summits of the Andes supply the floods of *the Amazons, the la Plata* and other rivers. *The Rhine, the Rhone* and *the Po* originate in the Alps. On the shores of *the Mediterranean* were the four great empires of the world: the Assyrian, the Persian, the Grecian and the Roman. The sea gull skims *the Baltic's* brine. *The Leviathan* is 680 feet long. We put up at *the Elephant* and *Castle,* a small inn by the road side. As for *the Coliseum, the Pantheon, the Vatican* &c. — they are quite inconceivable, and must be seen. *The Times* is the principal newspaper in England.

6. Before the following geographical names: *the Crimea, the Hague, the Havannah, the Levant, the Morea, the Palatinate, the Tyrol, the Ukraine.*

The Morea is a peninsula. In *the Levant* it is the custom to strew flowers on the bodies of the dead. Much rain falls in *the Havannah. The Hague* seems to have owed its origin to a hunting seat of the Counts of Holland in the wood Haag. Three sides of *the Crimea* are enclosed by the Black Sea.

7. Before appellative nouns, when one individual represents the whole species. For Exceptions see rule 267, 3, observation.

Milton in his Paradise Lost employs *the rose, the violet* and other flowers to beautify the blissfull bower of Eve. In *the garden,* in *the field,* on the bleak summit of *the hill, the botanist* is never at a loss for society. Of all who acknowledge the divine mission of Jesus, *the Roman Catholic* and *the Quaker* differ most widely from each other. The attachment of *the nightingale* to *the rose* is a well known Persian fable. *The jest* and *laugh* went round the hall. *The miser* grows rich by seeming poor, *the spendthrift* grows poor by seeming rich. Herodotus tells us that the Persians, from the age of five years to twenty, were taught only three things, to manage *the horse,* to use *the bow,* and to speak truth. He died *the reprobate* and *the ruffian.*

8. Before adjectives used absolutely, that is, when they have the value of nouns.

Education is the ornament of *the rich* and the wealth of *the poor*. Men are like animals, *the strong* prey upon *the weak*. To raise a fortune a man must have a certain kind of wit; but it is neither *the good* nor *the fine, the great* nor *the sublime, the strong* nor *the delicate*, and I am at a loss to explain which it is. He said that only to make himself appear *the wiser*. The oranges which I bought are *the sweetest*. Know *the past*, attend to *the present*.

9. Before collective nouns in a determinate sense.

The crowd was great. *The multitude* are fickle. *The mob* was dispersed. *The parliament* was dissolved by the Queen. *The army* approached the town by night.

10. Before the titles of emperor, empress, archduke, archduchess, czar, czarina.

The Archduke Charles had arrived at Lisbon and appeared at the head of his troops. *The Emperor Leopold* was son of a daughter of Philip the third. *The Empress Maria Theresa* had the faults as well as the virtues which are connected with a quick sensibility and a high spirit. *The Czar* Ivan I invited artizans from Germany, the Netherlands, and Italy.

11. In many idiomatical expressions:

To run the risk, to take the air, to take the alarm, to take the law of one, to get the start of one, to get the better of one, to give one the slip, to catch one in the fact, to be out of the question, to put one to the blush.

267. The Definitive Article *the* is omitted:

1. Before proper nouns in the singular. As proper nouns are considered also the days of the week, the months of the year, and the following nouns: *Elysium, Heaven, Hell, Olympus, Paradise, Providence, Purgatory, Satan, Olympus.* (For the exceptions see paragraph 266—5.)

How different is the government of *Turkey* from that of *Switzerland*. *Spenser* the poet lived in the reign of *Elizabeth*. The story of the Illiad is founded on the anger of *Achilles*. *Jupiter* has four moons, *Saturn* seven. I shall visit you in *August*. On *Wednesday* I will come, but on *Tuesday* I cannot. *Satan* chose the wilderness for the temptation of our Saviour. Mussulmans must skate into *Paradise* over Al Sirat, a bridge narrower than the thread of a famished spider.

Observation. The proper names of countries which differ from the German in not taking the article are, *Switzerland, Turkey, Lombardy, Normandy, Tartary, Bokhara, Wallachia, Mongolia.*

2. Before nouns which when used alone would not require the article, but which have an attribute joined to them, not for the sake of distinguishing them from others of the same class, but for expressing some quality of them; in this case the noun and its attribute form but a name by which the object spoken of is known.

Lord Byron's best poem is *Child Harold*. *Queen Elizabeth* was succeeded by James, son of *Maria Stuart*. I have seen the glaciers of *bleak mont Blanc*. *Little Tommy Merton's* servant was called *black William*. *Divine religion* enabled him to support the trials of *stern adversity*. Milton loved and understood the literature

of *modern Italy. Human life* is like a river, constantly flowing away, and yet constantly coming on. Wherever a language derived from that of *ancient Rome* is spoken, the religion of *modern Rome* to this day prevails. The greatest earthquake mentioned in *ancient history* was that which happened during the reign of Tiberius Caesar. I observed for some time the distinct reflexion of *Mont Blanc* and *Mount Argentière* in the calm of the lake which I was crossing; the distance of these mountains from their mirror is sixty miles. My soul lived in *sweet Elysium. Fire of imagination, strength of mind* and *firmness of soul* are gifts of nature.

3. Before appellative nouns, when used in a general sense in the plural. See rule 266, 7.

Worms commence the animal kingdom and lead us to *insects.* Adversity exasperates *fools* and dejects *cowards. Prodigals* are rich for a moment, *economists* for ever. *Fools* love no fools like themselves. *Hypocrites* make it their study to deck vice with the appearance of virtue. *Fire arms* were not known to the ancients. *Women* ought to be very circumspect, for a mere appearance is sometimes more prejudicial to them than a real fault. Even *benefits* should be seasoned with obliging manners.

Observation. Man and *woman,* in the singular, take no article before them; as, Hope is the chief blessing of *man.* What are the works of *man* when compared with those of nature? *Man* is the natural protector of *woman. Man* is not a plant rooted to a certain spot of earth; all soils and climates are suited to him alike.

4. Before abstract nouns and the names of stuffs.

Power is an inconstant mistress who has many lovers. *Life* is short. *Time* waits for no man. Let *virtue* guide you, or your choice will be wrong. *Pleasure* is necessary to man. *Perseverance* accomplishes more than *genius. Conceit* is to *nature* what paint is to *beauty,* it impairs what it would improve. Eblis is the oriental prince of *Darkness.* Where *truth* is sufficient to fill the mind, *fiction* is worse than useless. A graceful manner spoils nothing; it adds to *beauty* and heightens *modesty. Poetry, painting,* and *music* are called sister arts. *Building, architecture,* and *gardening* are his principal studies. *Poetry* is a mixture of *painting, music* and *eloquence.* He is well versed in *politics* and *statistics.*

Tea is used more by the English than any other nation. When thirsty I prefer *water* to *wine. Oxygen* was discovered by Priestley in 1774. *Hydrogen* is fourteen times lighter than *air. Bread* is used by all nations, hence it is called the staff of life. *Copper* derives its name from the island of Cyprus, where the metal was first wrought by the Greeks. *Quicksilver* derived its Latin name of hydrargyrum from two Greek words, signifying „silver water". *Gold* was compared by the alchemists to the sun, *silver* to the moon. *Platina* is twenty one times heavier than *water. Cochineal* is prepared from the dried bodies of a little insect, *coccus cacti,* which lives on various species of Cactus; *carmine* is prepared from it.

5. Frequently before the superlative degree of adjectives and adverbs, especially when not followed by the preposition *of.*

Most people like music. I saw him *last* night. There are little follies in the behaviour of *most* men, which their best friends are too tender to acquaint them with. The art which belongs to the imagination is often *purest* in an early age. She sang *most* beauti-

fully. I came *first* and you came *last*. Language, the machine of the poet, is *best* fitted for his purpose in its rudest state. He generally talks *most* who has *least* to say. The morning is *coolest* just before sunrise. When the lights are *brightest*, the shadows are *deepest*. Friendship shines with *brightest* ray, where adverse fortune shrouds the day.

This is *the* best *of* all. She sang *the* most beautifully *of* all the young ladies. This is the *best* fitted for your purpose *of* all the tools. She is *the* handsomest *of* all. Caesar was *the* greatest *of* all the Roman Generals. Venus is *the* brightest *of* all the planets. England is *the* richest *of* all nations.

6. Before participles used as substantives.

Eating and *drinking* are his chief pleasures. *Singing* and *dancing* are agreeable pastimes.

7. Before certain nouns which, with a preposition before them, form an adverbial phrase. Those which require the article in German, but not in English, are: *breakfast, change, church, college, court, deck, dinner, market, prison, sea, school, shore, supper, table, town.*

Come *to breakfast*. He is a merchant well known *on change*. I do not like to be late *at church*. His son is *at college*. Bacon was well received *at court*. He is *at dinner*. When the weather was fine his messmates had spread a mattress for him *on deck*, in the shade. The servant is gone *to market*. He was two years *in prison*. George went *to school* yesterday. *At sea* every thing that breaks the monotony of the surrounding expanse attracts attention. When shall we go *on shore?* Come *to supper*, the rest are already *at table*. To-morrow I go *to town*.

Observation. When the article is used before these nouns, it is the building or place which is referred to, rather than the purpose or aim of the action; as, I have been to *the church*, which is a very beautiful building. I saw many criminals in *the prison*.

8. Before the pronouns mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs.

This book is *mine*. That horse is *his*.

9. In many idiomatical expressions which require the article in German; as, to weigh —, to cast anchor, to let blood, to shake hands, to mount guard, to do a thing off hand, to go to work, to set sail, to set foot in a place, to be at stake, to be at hand.

268. The definite article *the* is employed to translate the German expressions je — je, um ſo, deſto, with comparatives.

The thinner clouds are, *the higher* they soar. *The more* we study the works of the creator, *the more* wisdom, beauty, and harmony we discover in them. Ovid compares a man of broken fortune to a falling column; *the lower* it sinks, *the greater* weight it must sustain. The resources of virtue are infinite; *the more* we make use of them, *the more* they multiply. The memory of Alfieri is *the more* dear to the Italians, because he is the bard of freedom. He said that in order to appear *the wiser*.

269. The article *the* follows the words, *all, both, half, double, treble &c., twice, three times &c.*

All the town will know it. *Both the* horses are mine. *Half the* sum would have been enough. I must have *twice* if not *three times the* number. My house is *double the* size of his.

270. The Indefinite Article *a* is used:

1. When the predicate is a substantive which expresses the rank, profession, business, or some quality of the subject, the idea expressed by the predicate being applicable to other persons or things than the one spoken of.

He is *a lawyer*. She is *a countess*. He is *a Newton*. He fancies himself *a Schiller*. He calls himself *a scholar*. He has been *a father* to me. He was *an enemy* to anarchy. He is become *a critic*. It is *a Madonna* of Raphael's. Mr. Macaulay was created *a baron*.

2. Before the names of measures, weights and the divisions of time.

Sixpence *a yard*. Ten pounds *an acre*. Sugar at fourpence *a pound*. The sessions take place four times *a year*. I take lessons twice *a week*.

Observation. The article *the* is sometimes used in this case.

3. Before the words *dozen, score, hundred, thousand, million, little, few, great, many*.

I bought *a dozen* oranges and *a score* of oysters. Less than *a hundred* soldiers defeated more than *a thousand* natives. *A million* of money. He has *a few* faults, but also *a great many* virtues. Be to her faults *a little* blind, be to her virtues very kind.

4. Instead of the numeral *one*, or the expression *one and the same*.

John and William are exactly of *a size*. They are just of *an age*. Four at *a time*. He drank it off at *a draught*. They were cut off to *a man*.

5. After the comparison of an adjective preceded by *no*.

It was *no* less *a person* than Byron himself.

6. Before some abstract nouns.

I have *a regard* for that man. I shall remain in Cologne for *a time*. Not being able to justify her conduct she flew into *a passion*. I am in *a hurry*. I am under *a necessity* of quitting England for a while. He always professed *a friendship* for her. We must make *a virtue* of necessity. A severe *headache*. To be too satisfied with ourselves is *a weakness*, but to be too dissatisfied is *a folly*.

7. Sometimes before participles.

While the ark was *a preparing*. He goes *a begging*. He is gone *a hunting*.

Observation. This use of the participle is now become almost obsolete.

8. After *as*.

I gave him an apple *as a* reward for his good behaviour. I sent him some wheat *as a* sample. I mention this *as a* proof of his honesty. He entered London *as a* fugitive. *As an* Englishman I wish success to the arms of my country.

9. After *what*, when used as an exclamation before appellative nouns.

What a lovely evening it is! *What a* chimera is man! *What a* confused chaos! *What a* subject of contradiction! A professed judge of all things and yet a feeble worm of the earth.

271. The article *a* is omitted:

1. When the predicate is a noun expressing a rank, title, or profession, limited to the person spoken of.

Louis Napoleon was elected *President* of the Republic and afterwards *Emperor* of the French. Wellington was appointed *commander* of the allied armies. Mrs. Talfourd was *counsel* for the prisoner. He was elected *Pope*. Lord Canning was appointed *governor-general*.

2. With the words *ever, never, part, no such,* in certain forms of expression.

Did *ever eye* behold such horrors? *Never man* was more beloved than Count Helmaar. Wales forms *part* of the island of Great Britain. I told you *no such* thing. Never *was promise* more faithfully kept.

272. The indefinite article *a* is placed after *such, half* and *many*.

I could write *such a* work in *half a* year. Behave in *such a* manner as to deserve the esteem of those around you. The embassy of the young Tarquin to the oracle at Delphi is *such a* story as would be told by a poet whose head was full of the Greek mythology. *Many a* man would be contented with such success. *Many a* flower dies neglected by man.

273. The article *a* is placed after the adjective which follows the words *as, how, so, too.*

He is *as* generous *a* man as his brother. *As* great *a* poet as Byron is there are many who prefer Wordsworth. It is hardly credible in a work of such length as the Iliad, *how* small *a* number of lines are employed in narration. *How* mean *a* man he must be thus to betray his friend. Homer sets his images in *so* clear *a* light that it is impossible to be blind to them. Though Mars is sometimes apparently as large as Venus, he never shines with *so* brilliant *a* light. The motives of the best actions will not bear *too* strict *an* enquiry. Pliny perished by an eruption of Vesuvius from *too* eager *a* curiosity in observing the phenomena.

274. It is not necessary to repeat the article before each noun, unless for the sake of emphasis.

I have bought *a* house and garden. The house and garden please me.

Noun.

The Nominative Case.

275. The subject, which is always in the nominative case, precedes the verb.

On Christmas Day, *William was crowned* in Westminster Abbey, under the title of William the First; but *he is* best known as William the Conqueror. So, on a Sunday morning, the eighteenth of September, the *Prince prepared* to give battle to the French king. Among all ornaments, the *diamond holds* the first rank. In some of

the nations of antiquity *fire was reverenced* as the supreme Deity. With all his deficiencies *Aristotle was* the most enlightened and profound critic of antiquity.

276. When the sentence begins with an adverb, or an adverbial phrase, the nominative, for the sake of emphasis, is placed after the verb. This is especially the case (but only in elegant writing, not in conversation), after auxiliary or neuter verbs, and after the adverbs *thus, scarcely, often, seldom, then, hence, thence, little, in vain, yet,* and some others.

Thus *ended, by* the humiliation of Athens, *that dreadful war of 27 years,* to which ambition gave rise, and which hatred made atrocious. Scarcely *had William Pitt* attained the age at which reflection commences, when Europe, with astonishment, beheld him filling the first place in the councils of the nation. Near the town of Newcastle *are vast beds of coal,* which lie far beneath the surface of the earth. Up *came the French king,* with all his force. O Lord, how manifold *are thy works!* in wisdom *hast thou* made them all. Such *was the situation* in which Frederic found himself. Now *came that terrible disease,* the plague into Europe. Here *stretches out the great peninsula of Arabia,* for the most part a dry and desert land. Often *have I* wandered among the desolate enclosures of Jerusalem by the moon's mournful light. A few months after the accession of Frederic the Great *died Charles VI, Emperor of Germany.*

277. When the adverb, or adverbial sentence, contains a negation, it requires an auxiliary verb after it, which must always precede the nominative case.

Nor *did the vain and restless poet* think it impossible that he might, from his hermitage near the Alps, dictate peace to Europe. Never *had the genius* of Frederic been so conspicuous. No longer *were the friar's eyes* directed towards the earth. But not again *did his ear* encounter the sound of laughter. To no purpose *are the young* endowed with the best abilities, if they want activity for exerting them. Neither *will I* wrestle longer with the decrees of Fate. Nor *was* there ever *anything* that has contributed to enlarge my apprehensions of the power of God, so much as the little portion of astronomy which I have been able to attain. Frederic's first battle was fought at Molwitz, and never *did the career* of a great commander open in a more inauspicious manner.

278. When an adjective begins the sentence the nominative is put after the verb.

Happy indeed is *the man* who possesses a true friend in the hour of need. *Great* was *our surprise* when we heard that he had returned.

279. The adverb *there* always requires the auxiliary, or the neuter verb, to precede the nominative.

There *are coal mines* in many parts of England. If the spring put forth no blossoms, in summer there *will be no flowers.* There *has been a murder* committed in the town to-day. There *were more than twenty men* killed. At this time there *stood* in the Strand, in London, *a palace* called the Savoy. A great many years ago there *dwelt,* in the ancient city of York, *five maiden sisters,* the subject of my tale.

280. The nominative is placed after the auxiliary, when by its inversion the conjunction *if* is omitted.

Were we to begin the world again, few of us would act as we have done. Often, *did we* know the whole, we should be inclined to pity those whom we now envy. *Had he* been more careful, he might have succeeded.

281. The nominative is placed after the verbs say, answer, reply and similar ones, when they are used parenthetically.

That battle, *said Napoleon*, speaking of Frederic's victory of Leuthen, was a masterpiece. How light the heart of sweet Alice is, *replied the sister*. True glory, *returned he*, is founded on humanity. Hush, dear, *whispered Dorel*, beseechingly. Louisa, *repeated Mr. Bounderby*, Louisa, Louisa. Stop a bit! *cried Bounderby*. Well! *blustered Mr. Bounderby*. Dear me, *whimpered Mrs. Gradgrind*. Are you going? *asked his friend*. How charming, *thought I*, is divine philosophy!

The Genitive Case.

282. The Genitive Case formed with *'s* is used to denote possession, and the first of the two nouns must be an animated being.

St. *Paul's* Cathedral. A *bookseller's* shop. *Humboldt's* Cosmos. A *horse's* head. *Virgil's* poem. The law of gravitation was Sir Isaac *Newton's* discovery. *Man's* happiness, or misery, depends mostly on himself. The *father's* prodigality will be the *son's* ruin.

Observation. In all cases however, the preposition *of* may be employed. The Cathedral of St. Paul. The shop of the bookseller. The Cosmos of Humboldt. The head of a horse. The discovery of Newton.

283. If both nouns are inanimate objects the genitive with *of* must always be employed.

The Cap *of* Good Hope. The House *of* Commons. The leg *of* the table. The point *of* the pin. The beauty *of* the painting. The influence *of* riches. The style *of* his letters. The contests *of* the sword are temporary, but the slanders *of* the pen pierce to the heart. Immoderate desire *of* wealth is the destruction *of* many men.

284. With certain words, however, denoting time, measure, and value the *'s* is used.

At the north pole there is a *fortnight's* moonlight and a *fortnight's* darkness by turns. Have *five years'* income before you begin to build, and always calculate the expense at double the estimate. The *thirty years'* war is that memorable struggle between Catholics and Protestants which desolated Germany for so long a period. Is *to-day's* mail arrived? Have you read yesterday's newspaper? Buy a *shilling's* worth. There was a *moment's* pause. He lives about a *stone's* throw from my house.

285. With the word *sake*, and when inanimate objects are personified the *'s* is used.

Give me that man that is not *passion's* slave, and I will wear him

in my heart's core as I do thee. In *fame's* temple there is always a niche for rich dunces, importunate scoundrels, or successful butchers of the human race. *Error's* long dominion is almost sufficient to make us doubt of *truth's* power. In manifestoes he might, for *form's* sake, insert some idle stories about his antiquated claim on Silesia. For *pity's* sake. For *conscience'* sake. For *righteousness'* sake. *Wisdom's* precepts are the delight of the good. *Beauty's* charms. *Freedom's* sons. *England's* fertile shores.

Her *eye's* dark charm 'twere vain to tell,
But look on that of the gazelle,
It will assist thy fancy well.

286. The apostrophe alone is used after nouns ending in a hissing sound, especially in poetry, after Greek names; but there are many common English proper nouns ending in a hissing sound which take the apostrophe and *s*.

Where high *Olympus'* cloudy tops arise. From strong *Patroclus'* hand the javelin fled. The hosts approve *Atrides'* speech.

Clarendon repaired many times to *St. James's* palace. It was in 1787 that *Lawrence's* father brought his son to London. Mr. *Williams's* house. *Charles's* book. *Thomas's* horse.

287. The names of localities, such as *house, lodgings, shop, coffee-house, inn, church &c.*, are frequently omitted, such places being pointed out with sufficient distinctness, when the name of the possessor is put in the genitive case.

The catholic religion may still exist in undiminished vigour when some traveller from New Zealand shall, in the midst of a vast solitude, take his stand on a broken arch of London Bridge to sketch the ruins of *St. Paul's*. *St. Peter's* at Rome is the largest cathedral in Europe. Sometimes I am seen thrusting my head into a round of politicians at *Will's*, sometimes I smoke a pipe at *Child's*. Did Mr. Addison encourage his young friend, Mr. Tickell, of *Queen's* (college) to translate Homer. Call for me at my *brother's*. We will dine at *Tortoni's*. He lives near my *uncle's*. I have been to *the bookseller's*. We did not laugh at Prince Puckler Muskau when he stepped from his carriage at *Mivart's*, covered with orders, rings, and gold chains. Frederic the Great dined this day at the Countess *Laniska's*.

288. The possessive case frequently supplies the place of the demonstrative pronouns *that, those*.

Crabbe's passage I never saw, and Scott I no further meant to follow than in his lyric measure which is *Gray's, Milton's* and *any one's* who likes it. It is bad enough to be one's own fool, but the vain man is *every body's*. I have neither the scholar's melancholy which is emulous; nor the *musician's* which is fantastical; nor the *courtier's* which is proud; nor the *soldier's* which is ambitious; nor the *lawyer's* which is politic; nor the *lady's* which is nice; nor the *lover's* which is all these. If Swift's life was the most wretched, I think *Addison's* was one of the most enviable. This book is my brother's.

The sailor's home is on the main;
The *warrior's*, on the tented plain;
The *maiden's*, in her bower of rest;
The *infant's* on its mother's breast.

289. When several nouns are intimately connected with each other, the last only receives the sign of the possessive case.

The *Emperor of Lilliput's* features are strong and masculine. I shall dine to-day at my *brother-in-law's*. Mr. Pope sent it to my *Lord Duke of Kingstone's* daughter. His *Grace the Lord High Steward's* friend. We gave each other the cut direct that night, at the *Duchess of Monte Fiasco's* ball. Go this moment to *Mr. Thompson, the jeweller's*.

290. When two genitives follow each other *of* and *'s* should be used alternately, if the nature of the nouns admit of it.

I have been learning one *of Gay's* fables. The literature *of* Queen *Anne's* time. A fine gentleman *of* Queen *Elizabeth's* days. The horse *of* the *Captain's* servant. The letters *of Swift's* friends. The avarice *of* my *sister's* husband may gain him riches, but it will not make him friends. The collar *of* my *uncle's* dog has his name Hector engraved on it. The Princess Johanna had gone to Portugal as the bride *of* the heir *of* that kingdom.

291. When one object, or an indefinite number of objects, is expressed, of which the possessor has more than those mentioned, not only the genitive with *of* is employed, but the possessing person takes also the apostrophe and *s*.

Hamlet is a tragedy *of Shakspeare's*. There is a fine picture *of Rubens's* in the Church of St. Peter, at Cologne. A friend *of the king's* warned him of the danger. This plan of the enemy's was defeated. Some friends *of my brother's* are coming. Several pupils *of Mr. Barden's* are going home for the holidays.

292. The apostrophe and *s* can never be used with adjectives employed as nouns.

The conquests *of the French*, under their consul Buonaparte, led to a continental peace. The French force was reduced to such extremity that to escape the vengeance *of the Blacks* it surrendered to the English. The terror *of the natives*. The cries *of the poor*.

For the further employment of the preposition as genitive see *of* among the prepositions.

The Dative Case.

293. The dative case is employed instead of the genitive when more stress is laid on the relation which one noun bears to another than on the idea of possession. (See *to* 5, among the prepositions.)

The next most remarkable event was the seizure by Henry of the heir *to* the Scottish throne, James, a boy of nine years old. The poet Prior was Secretary *to* the embassy at the Hague, Gentleman of the Bedchamber *to* King William, Secretary *to* the embassy in France and then ambassador to France. Mr. Arbuthnot became physician successively *to* Prince George and *to* Queen Anne. The great Napoleon was uncle *to* the present Emperor of France. He died a

victim *to* his intemperance. I am no friend *to* sitting up late at night. The rich man is often a slave *to* his servants. He is traveller *to* a great house in London. Darius said he was an enemy *to* the Athenians, because the Ionians, by their aid, had taken Sardes.

294. The dative case always follows the verb, except in cases where great emphasis is laid upon it, in which case it may stand at the beginning of the sentence.

In 1634 Thomas Parr was presented *to the king,* being 152 years of age. I granted *them* the favour they asked. I accord nothing *to* such an impotent weapon as threats. Give the book *to me.* Give *me* the book.

To Columbus we owe the discovery of America. *To that man* I owe the happiest days of my life. Self-love is captious, yet we take it for our guide; *to it* all our actions are directed, and from it we take counsel. *To her kingdom* her faith had first been plighted, said Mary. *To Charles* the prince of Orange was under various obligations.

The Accusative Case.

295. The accusative case always follows the verb, except when it is occasionally placed at the beginning of the sentence for the sake of emphasis.

Flattery corrupts both *the receiver* and the giver. Wit never makes *a man* rich, but riches will in some places make *a wit.* A German author of the seventeenth century said satirically of his contemporaries, „If a man who has *ordinary cleverness* and plenty of words cannot make *himself* a tolerable German poet in a fortnight, he does not deserve *another dinner.*“ The writings attracted *the attention* of the Duke of Weimar who invited *Goethe* to his court and soon elevated *him* to an honourable position.

Extravagance he always avoided. *Beer* I very seldom drink.

Their estates, and the estates of all the nobles who had fought against him, king William gave to his own Norman knights.

> *Achilles' wrath,* to Greece the direful spring
> Of woes unnumbered; heavenly goddess, *sing.*

Dative and Accusative.

296. The accusative generally precedes the dative.

Enjoy the world, but do not give up your whole *time to it.* He gives much *money to the poor.* It was decided by the emperor to intrust the *regency to his daughter.* Luther had thrown down the *gountlet to the Vatican* by publicly burning the papal bull at Wittenberg.

297. With certain verbs the dative usually precedes the accusative, but then the preposition *to* is omitted. (For a list of these verbs see Government of verbs.)

The most trifling actions of a man give *an acute observer some notion* of his mind. God has given *me reason* that I may judge for

myself. A brave man thinks no one his superior who does *him an injury*. Send *me the book*.

Observation. The dative can, however, in these cases be placed after the accusative, but then the preposition *to* must not be omitted.

God has given reason *to man*. Send the book *to me*.

298. *It* and *them* always precede the dative, whether the preposition *to* be omitted or not.

Give *it* me. Give *it* to me. I will send *them* you to-morrow. Mary, putting the ring on her finger, showed *it* to the company.

299. When the accusative has an explanatory sentence joined to it, it always follows the dative.

Count Egmont then presented to the queen *a diamond ring* which the emperor had sent her. I described to Mr. Madden *the scenes* of horror which we had witnessed. Relate to me *the whole* of the circumstances connected with that affair. I cannot impute to him *such an intention* as you describe.

Apposition.

300. When several substantives are in apposition, the first alone takes the sign of the case.

Who is not acquainted with the mournful history *of* Maria Stuart, *that unfortunate princess?* That such a picture was sent to Mary appears from a letter *of* Philip's aunt, *the regent* of the Netherlands. The emperor intrusted the regency *to* his daughter, *the Princess Joanna*. Cato after the battle of Pharsalia, fled *to* Utica, *a city* of Africa. Xenophon was a disciple *of* Socrates, *the philosopher*. Spenser, *the poet*, lived in the reign *of* Elizabeth, *queen* of England. This theory is *Kepler's, the great German astronomer*. It is a passage *of* Xenophon's, *the general and historian*.

301. The German titles Herr, Frau, before titles expressing the rank, quality, profession or calling of a person must never be translated into English.

Yes, *General*, said I. Well, *Captain*, what do you think of it? Is she in danger, *Doctor? Professor* Owen was here this morning. He himself, *Duchess*, and in this moment occupied with you. The indefatigable zeal of the (Frau) *superintendant*. What do you bring us, *Colonel?* How is your *lady* (Frau Gemahlin)?

302. The titles denoting the office, profession, or trade of the husband cannot be transferred to the wife.

The General's *lady*. Dr. Bond's *lady*. The gardener's wife or daughter (die Gärtnerin).

Number.

303. In speaking of two or more persons of the same name and title the sign of the plural can be used with either the name or the title.

The two Miss *Johnsons*. The two *Misses* Johnson. The two Mr. *Smiths*. The two *Messieurs* Smith.

Observation. If the title is a degree of relationship, the title, and not the name, takes the sign of the plural.

Baring *brothers*. The *brothers* Baring. My *uncles* Pitt.

304. The plural of some nouns is used in English, where in German only the singular is used.

Gentlemen, keep your *seats*. Johnson wrote the *lives* of the English poets. Their *healths* were drunk with loud hurrahs. It is unnecessary to describe their *characters*. He calmly put his *hands* into his *pockets*. She bade the girls hold up their *heads*. They raised their *voices*. They returned to their *homes*.

305. In weight and measure the plural is used.

A yard measure is three *feet*. I have bought two *pounds* of tea. Dwalaghery, in Nepaul, is 26,424 *feet* high, being the highest mountain in the world. This book is three *inches* thick.

306. The following words are used without the sign of the plural.

Brace (two).	*Horse* (cavalry).
Cannon.	*Sail* (sailing ships).
Dozen (twelve).	*Score* (twenty).
Foot (infantry).	*Stand*.
Gross (12 dozen).	*Stone* (14 pounds).
Head (used of cattle).	

How many *head* of cattle were sold in the market to-day? He charged the enemy's *horse* and put them to flight. He had only two thousand *foot*, and not two hundred *horse* with him at the time. They captured nearly all the enemy's *cannon*. The Spanish Armada consisted of a hundred and thirty *sail*. At that time the natives possessed many thousand *stand* of arms. Ten *brace* of partridges and about two *dozen* hares were shot. About four *score* men, women and children were overwhelmed by the earthquake. I have bought several *gross* of excellent steel-pens. He weighs more than ten *stone*.

307. A few other words, when joined to a number, take no sign of the plural.

The engine is of *eighty-horse* power. One seventy *four-gun* ship was sunk. It cost me a *ten-pound* note. A *five-shilling* ticket. A *four-wheel* carriage. A *three and sixpenny* knife. A *two-inch* board. A *three-foot* rule. An *eight-day* clock.

Observation. Pair and pound are also sometimes, though improperly, used in the singular in familiar discourse. I have bought three *pair* of gloves. I paid him two *pound* ten.

Adjective.

Position of the Adjective.

308. The adjective is placed before the noun which it qualifies.

It appears easier to pronounce decidedly upon the *great* characters of antiquity, not because we have *greater* means of discovering truth, but simply because we have *less* means of discovering error. The *modern* historians of Greece have forgotten this.

309. When adjectives, or participles used as adjectives, are joined to other words, they are placed after the noun.

There is in China a porcelain tower *280 feet high*. A room *fifteen feet long*. England is a country *rich in coal and minerals of all descriptions*. Helgoland is a small island *belonging to England*. France was for some years, during the great Revolution, the scene of horrors *not to be described*. Philip's correspondence constantly adverts to the arrears *due to his troops*. Frederic the Great's household was managed with a frugality, *unusual* in the establishments of opulent subjects — *unexampled* in any other palace.

310. Some adjectives, used with the noun as titles, are placed after the noun.

We are sure that the superiority of Milton's Paradise *Lost* to his Paradise *Regained* is not more decided than the superiority of the Paradise *Regained* to every other poem which has since made its appearance. Never was there so consummate a master of what our James *the first* would call king-craft, as Louis *the fourteenth*. Few of the earliest Arabian bards were inhabitants of Arabia *Felix*. At the dissolution of the Roman dominion purity of diction disappeared, first in the Latin territories, and then in Asia *Minor*. His excellency the ambassador *extraordinary* appeared in a suit of velvet richly embroidered, the minister *plenipotentiary* in a scarlet gown. A knight *errant*. The prince *royal*. The prince *regent*. Attorney *general*. Solicitor *general*. Lieutenant *general*. The theatre *royal*. The body *politic*. Chapter *the first*. Act *the first*, scene *the second*. A verb *neuter*. The heir *apparent*. The heir *presumptive*. The sum *total*.

311. Some adjectives can be placed before or after the noun, being placed after it when greater emphasis is required.

God *Almighty*. *Almighty* God. It is to be regretted that a custom *so truly elegant and touching* has disappeared from general use. A sky *so clear, so blue, and bright*, I never saw in the duller regions of the north. He was a general, *bold, daring, yet prudent*. Monday *last*. *Last* Monday. Milton's public conduct was such as was to be expected from a man of a spirit *so high*, and an intellect so *powerful*.

Nouns used as adjectives.

312. The proper names of places are used as adjectives, and also some others nouns of which there exists no corresponding adjective.

Clive was in his eighteenth year, when he accepted a writership in the service of the *East India* Company. Macaulay's essays were first published in the *Edingburgh* Review. The Times is the most important of the *London* Newspapers. The *Cologne* Gazette. The river Severn, the second river in England, empties itself into the *Bristol* channel. The *Slave* States of America. The *negro* slaves.

313. The names of stuffs and metals are used as adjectives.

The first *silk*-worms were brought from the East Indies to Constantinople, in the year 555, by two monks. Henry the Second of France was the first who in Europe wore *silk* stockings. The *gold*

coin current in Great Britain is composed of twenty two parts of gold, and two of copper. The *tin* ware used in the kitchen are vessels made of thin plates of iron, coated with tin. A *silver* watch. A *steel* pen. An *iron* ship. A *cotton* gown. A *stone* quarry. *Copper* coin. A *gold* ring.

314. *Wool, wood, lead* and *flax* have the corresponding adjectives *woollen, wooden, leaden* and *flaxen*, which must always be used. *Gold* and *silk* have *golden* and *silken*, but these are used only figuratively.

A *woollen* cloth manufactory. A *wooden* spoon. The *wooden* walls of old England. A *leaden* spoon. A *flaxen* headed cow-boy came whistling o'er the lea. The *golden* rays of the setting sun shed a mellow light athwart the windows of the old abbey. Her long *silken* ringlets waved over a neck of spotless white. Her *golden* tresses shade the bosom's stainless pride.

Adjectives used as Nouns.

315. Adjectives are used as substantives with the article *the*.

The origin of *the sublime* is an interesting subject for the critic. Have you read Burke's excellent treatise on *the sublime* and *beautiful?* It is better to excel in mediocrity, than to err in endeavouring to attain *the great* and *the sublime*. The *evil* that men do lives after them, the *good* is often interred with their bones. *The worst* is past, *the best* is to come. Ambition sacrifices *the present* to *the future*, but pleasure sacrifices *the future* to *the present*.

316. If the adjective stands for persons, it is always in the plural, though without taking the sign of the plural.

The humble, the meek, the merciful, the just, the pious and *the devout* are everywhere of one religion. Reproof is useless to *the good*, and *the evil* and *conceited* despise it. Man is a tool-making and machine-making animal; by means of this faculty alone he has triumphed over the subtlety of *the cunning*, the swiftness of *the fleet* and the force of *the strong*. At Athens, the purses of *the rich* were laid under regular contribution for the support of *the poor*. The beneficence of Bacon's philosophy resembled the beneficence of the common father whose sun rises on *the evil* and *the good*, whose rain descends for *the just* and *the unjust*. The happiness of *the wicked* passes away like a torrent. *The covetous, the angry, the proud, the jealous, the talkative* cannot but make ill friends, as well as false ones.

317. When in German the adjective is in the singular, and stands for one person, in English an appellative noun must be added.

The difference between the rich *man* and the poor *one* is this: — the former eats when he pleases, the latter when he can. The wicked *man* always thinks other people as bad as himself. The learned *man* sees much where the ignorant *one* sees nothing. The miserable *wretch*. I did what I could to console the unhappy *one*. Unhappy *woman!* The impious *man* fears death. The wise *man* is tranquil, be his fortune good or bad.

318. The adjectives *English, French, Scotch, Irish, Welsh* and *Dutch* are used with the article *the* to denote the whole

nation. When separate individuals are expressed, they are joined to the words *man* and *men*.

The *Dutch* seemed to be paralyzed with terror at the approach of the immense armies of Louis. The *English* under James the first and Charles the first were less oppressed than the *French* under Louis the Fifteenth and Louis the Sixteenth. Edward the first subdued the *Welsh* and gave to his son the rank of Prince of Wales. Edward the second was defeated by *the Scotch* at Bannockburn, in 1314, by which battle the independence of Scotland was secured. The *Irish* are lively, witty, and generous, but very improvident. Bayonets were first used by the *French* in 1693. There, at thirty six, the most celebrated *Englishman* of the nineteenth century (Byron) closed his brilliant and miserable career. Scott was a *Scotchman*, Moore an *Irishman*. The celebrated *Dutchman*, De Witt, was torn to pieces by an infuriated rabble. The meeting was composed of *Englishmen* and *Frenchmen*. I travelled with two *Irishmen*. An Englishwoman. Some Englishwomen.

319. The adjectives ending in *an*, denoting the names of nations, take an *s* in the Plural.

An Austrian. A Prussian. An Italian. I met at the count's three *Austrians*, two *Prussians* and two *Italians*. The proposed abdication of Charles the fifth filled the *Castilians*, as it did all Europe, with astonishment. The *Spartans* contrived to be a day too late for the battle of Marathon; they suffered the *Athenians*, to whom they owed their lives and liberties, to be a second time driven from their country by the *Persians*. Napoleon defeated the *Russians* at Eylau. The *Indians* were incited against the *Americans* in their war of independence. The *Normans* conquered England in 1066. The *Persians*, *Syrians* and *Babylonians* began their day at sun rising; the *Romans* and *Egyptians* at midnight.

320. The adjectives Spanish, Flemish, Swedish, Danish, Polish and Turkish can never be used as nouns.

The glory of the *Spanish* pencil had departed with Velasquez and Murillo. Charles the fifth had disgusted his *Spanish* subjects by the preference he had given to his *Flemish*. He married a *Polish* lady. A *Turkish* pipe.

Observation. The names of the nations are, Spaniards, Flemings, Swedes, Danes, Poles and Turks.

321. The adjectives ending in *ese* denote the people without any change of termination.

A *Chinese*. Two *Chinese*. The *Chinese*. The *Portuguese* are not fond of travelling. In 1396 the *Genoese* put themselves under the protection of Charles the Sixth King of France.

Observation. The whole of these adjectives can be used to denote the language of the nation.

He speaks English, French, German, Russian, Italian, Spanish, Turkish and Portuguese.

322. The English language has very few adjectives derived from the names of cities, and not many nouns to denote their inhabitants.

A Parisian hat. The Parisians. The Londoners. The Neapolitans.

The Genoese. The Milanese. The Venetians. The Florentines. The Viennese. The Hanoverians. The Romans. The Athenians. The Thebans.

Observation. Even these for the greater part, denote the inhabitants of the states rather than of the cities. In other cases various expressions are used, such as, The people of Berlin. The inhabitants of Cologne. The Dresden people. A Manchester man. Some persons of Hamburg.

323. The following adjectives are also nouns, and are used both in the singular and plural: Black, divine, equal, female, fluid, fugitive, inferior, junior, liquid, lunatic, male, native, natural, patient, sage, saint, savage, solid, superior, white. Also the names of sects and parties, as, Catholic, Protestant, Tory, Whig, Radical, confederate, malcontent.

His servant was a *black.* The *whites* of America despise the *blacks.* Cook was stabbed in the back by a *native.* *Solids* are generally heavier than *fluids.* Paley was a celebrated *divine.* Be respectful to your *superiors.* The *patient* has recovered from his illness. The *malcontents* were dispersed. The *Whigs* were defeated by a large majority.

324. The German um, when used to denote the extent of the difference between two objects compared, is translated by *by,* which is generally placed after the adjective.

The towers on the walls of Babylon were higher *by* ten feet than the walls. The emperor of Lilliput is *taller by* the breadth of my nail than any of his court.

The Degrees of Comparison.

325. The German als after the comparative of adjectives is in English always translated by *than.*

Venus is brighter *than* all the other planets. London is much larger *than* any other European city. The Rhine is longer *than* the Moselle. Etna is much higher *than* Vesuvius. The entrance to the Paradise of Mahomet has been represented as narrower *than* a spider's web and sharper *than* the edge of a sword. The early history of Rome is far more poetical *than* anything else in Latin literature.

326. When only two objects are compared, the comparative is to be preferred to the superlative.

Newton and Kepler were both great men, but Newton was the *greater* of the two. The *elder* Pitt. Homer was *the greater* genius, Virgil the *better* artist. Pliny the *Elder* was born at Verona, in Italy.

327. The superlative *most* is used before an adjective to express its quality in a high degree.

The dog is a *most watchful* animal, and yet he sleeps a great part of the day. I am not sure that any verses in our language surpass, in vigour and feeling, Byron's *most beautiful* description of the evening which preceded the battle of Quatre Bras.

We spent a *most agreeable* evening. Shelley seems, in many instances, to have had a *most refined* ear for the touching music of versification. Smooth waters often conceal *most dangerous* gulphs.

328. *Farther* and *farthest* are used only of distance, further and furthest in argumentative discourse.

The eagle can see *farther* than any other creature. The herring is not found in warm regions, nor *farther* south than the northern coast of France. Saturn is the *farthest* from the sun of any of the planets that can be seen by the naked eye.

I have nothing *further* to add. All *further* search for Franklin has been abandoned by the government.

329. *Former* is used to denote the first mentioned of two objects, and also as an attribute before nouns.

Herculaneum and Pompeii were destroyed by an irruption of Vesuvius; the *former* was situated about four miles from the crater, the latter about six. The great and the little are not so very unequal; the splendour of the *former* is more than compensated by the security of the latter. In *former* times.

330. *Later, latest* are used of time; *latter* and *last* denote the order of succession.

Milton is perhaps the only poet of *later* times who has been distinguished by the excellence of his Latin verse. He came nearly an hour *later*.

Geography and chronology are the two eyes of history; the former tells you where events happened and the *latter* at what particular period. The first ingredient in conversation is truth, the next, good sense, the third good humour, the *last*, wit. The *last* time I saw him was at Berlin. *Last* Monday.

331. *Lesser* is occasionally used before a noun to denote the *smaller* of two objects.

Asia Minor is sometimes called the *lesser* Asia.

332. *Nearest* is that which is at the shortest distance; *next* denotes the order of succession.

Of all the planets Mercury is *nearest* to the sun, being about thirty seven millions of miles from that body. How far off is the *nearest* village?

The *next* planet beyond Mercury is Venus. The moon, *next* to the sun, has, of all the heavenly bodies, the greatest influence on the earth. An open confession stands in the *next* place to innocence. Send to the *next* village. Sit *next* me, *Next* Monday. The *next* day I returned.

333. *Older* and *oldest* are used when the objects mentioned are compared with others. *Elder* and *eldest* are used either alone, or as attributes before the noun, consequently *elder* never takes *than* after it.

The *oldest* diamond mine that we know of is in the river Gonel, which empties itself into the Ganges. How many years *older* than you is your eldest brother? It was the most violent hurricane, which had happened within the memory of that renowned personage, the *oldest* inhabitant.

After King Alfred came Edward, surnamed The *Elder*. Pliny, the *Elder*, was born at Verona, in Italy. The *elder* Pitt was created Earl of Chatham. The *eldest* son succeeds to the title and estates of his father. My *eldest* brother is in America. I am the *eldest* of the family.

Further Remarks on Adjectives.

334. Some few adjectives, which in German are used only with an impersonal verb, are used with a personal verb in English.

We had *like* to have been too late. He is *certain* to come. We are *sure* to succeed if we try to please. We are *likely* to have rain. What makes you so *long* in getting ready? I am *right* and he is *wrong*. The Athenian courts of justice were not the purest in the world, but their decisions were at least as *likely* to be just, as the abuse of a deadly enemy.

335. An adjective is used instead of an adverb after a neuter verb, when the subject, and not the verb, is qualified.

How many bright eyes grow *dim*, how many soft cheeks turn *pale*, and none can tell the cause that blighted their loveliness. It is a common wish of all hen-pecked husbands in the neighbourhood, when time hangs *heavy* on their hands, that they might have a quieting draught out of Rip van Winkle's flagon. He was cast *loose* upon the world. I contemplate the stars which glitter so *bright* in the vast expanse above me. As I approached, the line of dark green grew *deeper*, — grew *wavy* in its outline — and forest trees rose up before me. We saw no living thing except a vulture flying *low*. Storks or cranes sitting *fearless* upon the low roofs, look gravely down upon you. She looked *grave* at my request. His voice rang *clear*. I feel *anxious* about him. He passed *safe* through the fiery ordeal. We arrived *safe* at Glasgow. The iron feels *cold*. How *sweet* this rose smells! The air felt *keen*. The fire burns *bright*. The wine tastes *sour*. The word is pronounced *short*. The grass is cut *close* and then rolled *smooth*. She appears *amiable*. The voice of Marius could not sound more *deep* and *solemn* among the ruins of Carthage, than the strains of the pilgrim amid the broken fragments and fallen statues of her subduer. Poverty falls *heavy* on him only who deems it a misfortune. Keep *holy* the sabbath day.

336. Some of the verbs which govern the accusative with the infinitive (see Infinitive) can take an adjective after the accusative, where in German the conjunction daß is necessary.

I thought *him honest* and therefore I trusted him. I did not believe *him capable* of doing it. I imagined *it true*. I found my *servant dishonest* and sent her away. He proved *it false*.

337. The adjectives *like, unlike, worth,* govern the accusative case.

False friendship, *like* the ivy, decays and ruins the wall it embraces. She is very much *like him*. *Like me*, you can see the error, but cannot correct it. Milton's spirits are *unlike* those of almost all other writers. It is not *worth* while. It is not *worth* the trouble of fetching it.

Numerals.

Cardinal Numbers.

338.

0 Zero, nought, cipher.	12 twelve.	50 fifty.
1 one.	13 thirteen.	60 sixty.
2 two.	14 fourteen.	70 seventy.
3 three.	15 fifteen.	80 eighty.
4 four.	16 sixteen.	90 ninety.
5 five.	17 seventeen.	100 a hundred.
6 six.	18 eighteen.	101 a hundred and one.
7 seven.	19 nineteen.	1858 One thousand eight hundred and fifty eight.
8 eight.	20 twenty.	
9 nine.	21 twenty one.	
10 ten.	22 twenty two.	
11 eleven.	30 thirty.	1000000 a million.
	40 forty.	

339. The numbers are named in their natural order in reckoning beyond sixty; as, 65, *sixty five;* 221, *two hundred and twenty one;* 1,246,873, *one million, two hundred and forty six thousand, eight hundred and seventy three.* The conjunction *and* must never be omitted after the hundreds; as, One hundred *and* forty six.

340. In numbers below sixty the small number may be placed after or before the large one; as, 21, *twenty one,* or *one and twenty;* 45, *forty five,* or *five and forty.*

341. The number 6 is called *half a dozen;* the number 12 *a dozen,* and the number 20 *a score.*

342. The numerals are adjectives, and consequently subject to no changes; as, *Five* men, *forty* horses. *Ten, hundred,* and *thousand* are nouns when in the plural; as, *tens* of thousands; *hundreds* of horses; *thousands* of men. *Million* and *dozen* are both nouns and adjectives; as, A *million* men, a *million of* pounds; a *dozen* oranges, a *dozen* of eggs. *Score* is only a noun; as, A *score of* oysters.

343. *Hundred, thousand* and *million* generally take the article *a* before them; as, *A hundred* years ago; *a thousand* foot soldiers; *a million* of pounds. The numeral *one* is used before them in reckoning large numbers.

In the year *one* thousand and sixty six William the Conqueror invaded England. Lord Byron received *one* thousand five hundred and seventy five pounds for the third Canto of Child Harold, and two thousand *one* hundred for the fourth. He lives at number *one* hundred and forty.

344. The year of our Lord is more frequently reckoned by hundreds than thousands; as, 1858, *eighteen hundred* and fifty eight.

Ordinal Numbers.

345.

1st the first,	13th the thirteenth,	30th the thirtieth,
2nd the second,	14th the fourteenth,	40th the fortieth,
3rd the third,	15th the fiftcenth,	50th the fiftieth,
4th the fourth,	16th the sixteenth,	60th the sixtieth,
5th the fifth,	17th the seventeenth,	70th the seventieth,
6th the sixth,	18th the eighteenth,	80th the eightieth,
7th the seventh,	19th the nineteenth,	90th the ninetieth,
8th the eighth,	20th the twentieth,	100 the hundredth,
9th the ninth,	21th the twenty first,	101st the hundred and first,
10th the tenth,	22nd the twenty second,	
11th the eleventh,	23rd the twenty third,	1000th the thousandth,
12th the twelfth,	24th the twenty fourth,	1,000,000th the millionth.

346. In titles the ordinal numbers are placed after the noun; as, Scene *the first,* act *the second.* Chapter *the twenty first,* Louis *the fourteenth.* Otherwise they are placed like adjectives before the noun; as, I liked the *first scene* of the second act. I read as far as the *twenty first chapter.*

347. Before the names of the months *of* always follows the ordinal numbers; as, Victoria ascended the throne on the *twentieth of* June 1837.

Adverbial Ordinal Numbers.

348.

First, firstly,	fifthly,	eightly,
secondly,	sixthly,	ninthly,
thirdly,	seventhly,	tenthly.
fourthly,		

Instead of these numbers, which cannot go beyond *tenthly,* the expressions: *in the first place, in the second place, in the eleventh place,* are frequently used.

Multiplication Numbers.

349.

Once,	four times,
twice,	five times,
three times,	a hundred times,
thrice (poetical),	ten thousand times.

350.

Single,	sextuple,
double,	octuple,
treble, triple,	decuple,
quadruple,	centuple.
quintuple,	

Single, double and *treble* are in constant use, the others are seldom employed.

These latter numbers are also expressed by the word *fold* added to the cardinal numbers; as, *two fold, three fold, four fold, five fold, a hundred fold.*

Fractional Numbers.

351. 1/2 one half, a half.
1/3 one third, a third.
1/4 one fourth, a quarter.
1/5 one fifth, a fifth,
1/10 one tenth, a tenth.
2/3 two thirds.
3/4 three fourths, three quarters.
4/5 four fifths.
5/6 five sixths.
7/8 seven eighths.

In weights and measures the whole number precedes the names of the weight or measure, and the fractional number follows it; as, *One* ounce and *a quarter*. *Two* pounds and *a half*. *Three* yards and *seven eighths*. *Five* miles and *a quarter*. *Two* degrees and *a half* of cold.

352. *Half* takes the article after it without a genitive case; as, *Half a* day. *Half the* time.

Pronouns.

Personal Pronouns.

353. When the subject of the principal sentence is a personal pronoun, it must not be repeated in the accessory sentence.

We, *who are* mortal, ought never to forget that there is a future state. I, *who am* content with what I have, do not place my happiness in the acquirement of wealth. You, *who are* a man of honour, will, I am sure, never act against your conscience. I, *who did* not expect so much perfidy in a man whom I loved, followed his counsels blindly.

354. *You* is the only pronoun by which persons are addressed in conversation, whether speaking to a prince, or a peasant; to a grown up person, or a little child; to a perfect stranger, or the nearest relation.

No, Madam, no, cried Amy, interrupting the queen, as there is a God above us, I am not the sordid wretch *you* would make me. *You* are right, John, with industry and sobriety *you* may always get a good living. Have *you* written *your* exercise, Harry? Yes, father, I will show it *you*.

355. *Thou* is used in addressing persons only in poetical language, and by the religious sect called Quakers.

Why dost *thou* come to my presence with *thy* shadowy arms? Do I fear *thy* gloomy form, spirit of dismal Loda? Weak is *thy* shield of clouds; feeble is that meteor *thy* sword. Lead me in *thy* truth and teach me: for *thou* art the God of my salvation; on *thee* do I wait all the day. Yes, friend Newland, what is it that *thou* requirest? said the young quakeress.

Observation. *Thou* and *you* are not unfrequently used by poets in the same sentence.

Go, good Tressilian, I have injured *thee*, too — I robbed *you* of a childish heart.

356. *Ye,* though frequently used in poetical language by English authors as an accusative is, strictly speaking, the nominative case.

Ye winds, breathe soft or loud; and wave your tops, *ye* pines; fountains, and *ye* that warble as *ye* flow, time his praise.

357. The pronoun *it* is employed as impersonal subject, joined by the verb *is* to the personal pronouns and to nouns in the nominative; as, *It is I; it is thou; it is he; it is she; it is we; it is you; it is they.*

It *is I,* Hannibal, that now *ask* a peace, and thinking it expedient I will inviolably maintain it. O blessed health, it *is thou* who *enlargest* the soul and *openest* all its powers to receive instruction. It *is* only *he* who can say to the ocean: „Thus far shalt thou go and no farther.“ It *was the Egyptians* who first observed the course of the stars, regulated the year and invented arithmetic. It *is the wind* that makes that noise.

Observation. When pronouns of the first and second persons are used, the verb must agree with them in person. (See the first two of the above examples.)

358. The personal pronouns of the first and second person may also be used as subject, joined by the copulative verb to a pronoun in the third person.

I am *he* who gave the order. *We* are *they* who defended the castle. *Thou* art *she* who brought this charge against the innocent girl.

359. *It* is used as impersonal subject when the person spoken of is as yet unknown to the speaker.

Who is there? *It* is the shoemaker. *It* was Walter who called on me this morning. *It* is not always the most skilful persons that succeed best.

360. When the person or thing spoken of is known to the speaker, the proper personal pronoun must be employed instead of *it.*

Who is Mr. Smith? *He* is a shoemaker. *She* is the first actress of the present day. *He* is an amiable man. Do you know these gentlemen? *They* are friends of mine. There is an intimate connection between benevolence and humility; *they are* virtues of the same stock. A sea voyage is full of subjects for meditation; but then *they* are the wonders of the deep, and of the air. Every one admires Cicero and Demosthenes; *they* are the greatest orators of antiquity.

361. The German *es,* used in an indefinite sense to express the existence of an object, must be translated by *there,* which may take the verb after it either in the singular or the plural.

Take counsel of thine own heart, for *there is* not a more faithful monitor. Metrical romances abound in every country where *there is* much curiosity and intelligence. Where *there is* wisdom, *there will be* good temper, calmness and cheerfulness. Wit will never make a rich man, but *there are* places where riches will always make a wit. *There are* forty men of wit to be found for one man of good sense.

Were there but one virtuous man in the world, he would hold up his head with confidence and honour. *There can be* no greater liberty than a good government. *There cannot live* a more unhappy creature than an ill-natured man. *There must be* eating and drinking, it is only the excess which must be blamed. *There was* a great crowd of people. *There is* a man here who witnessed the affair. *There were* some passages which did not please me. *There cannot be* much more wine in the cellar. *There must have been* some mistake. *There has been* a man murdered to-day in the town. *Is there* anything in the world more worthy of our love than virtue?

362. The German pronoun es, when it refers to an adjective, a verb, or a sentence, is translated by *so*.

If you wish to appear *learned*, endeavour to be *so*, there is no shorter method. In Italy the infantry was regarded as comparatively *worthless*, and was neglected till it became really *so*. Those who appear to be *cunning* may be *so*, but they are not wise. The miser is *rich* and the extravagant man *poor*, without seeming *so*. A husband and wife that *love* each other show their children and servants that they should do *so* too. Friendship not only *speaks freely*, but acts *so* too. Who is afraid of always *being deceived*, is constantly *so*.

363. The German pronoun es, when it refers to a noun, is either translated by *such*, *one*, or is omitted.

The person you relieve may be an honest man, and I know that you who relieve him are *such*. I am a citizen, and *such* I wish to remain. My brother is a captain, and I hope to become *one* too. His father was a musician, but he is not.

364. Es is not translated at all after conjunctions of comparison, nor after the auxiliary verbs when they refer to a previous verb.

A man who loves to show his knowledge is often more ignorant *than he seems*. He is not so rich *as you suppose*. The work is done better *than I expected*. An extravagant man is often not *so* rich *as he seems*, as a miser is generally richer *than he seems*. Men in high situations are not always great men, though by courtesy it is supposed *they are*. He was not rewarded as he deserved *to be*.

365. With a numeral the personal pronouns require the preposition *of* before them.

There were four *of us* at Mr. Rick's. Two *of them* were in black. How many *of you* are there?

The Pronoun One.

366. The pronoun *one* is frequently used with an adjective as a substitute for a previous noun, to avoid the repetition of it. It is used both in the singular and plural.

There is nothing so baleful to a small *man* as the shade of a great *one*. I have observed that a married *man* falling into misfortune is more apt to retrieve his situation than a single *one*. My *life* has been a happy *one*. The best thing that a man can possess is a good *wife*, and the worst a bad *one*. The midnight pillow is a horror to the bad *man*, but the consolation and peace to a good *one*. A modest

youth may become a confident *man,* but never an impudent *one.* Imaginary *evils* soon become real *ones* by indulging our reflections on them. The fixed *stars* are the marks by which astronomers are enabled to judge of the course of the moveable *ones.* There are many *churches* in London, but not many beautiful *ones.* All these *pens* are bad *ones.*

367. *One* is sometimes used in the place of a substantive not expressed in the sentence.

And love is still an emptier sound, the modern fair *one's* jest. On these occasions our two little *ones* always read to us. Henceforth I will detest the false *one.* Unto thee will I sing with the harp: O thou Holy *one* of Israel. And thou shalt know that I the Lord am thy Saviour and Redeemer, the mighty *one* of Jacob. I dreamed of the absent *one.*

368. *One* is frequently used after *this* and *that,* but is not indispensable. It can never be employed after the plurals *these* and *those.*

This tree is dead, but *that one* may recover. That house belongs to me, *this one* to my brother. *These* apples are sweet, but *those* are not.

369. *One* is used after adjectives and the demonstrative pronouns only as a substitute for an appellative noun, and not for an abstract noun, or the names of stuffs.

Dark *wood* is more suitable for your pupose than *light.* This *meat* is better than *that.* Use old *wine,* not *new!* To prosecute him would be throwing good *money* after *bad.*

370. *One* is not used after the superlative, and seldom after the comparative, of adjectives of one syllable.

Reason teaches us to face small dangers in order to avoid *greater,* and even to undergo the *greatest* when our duty requires it. The fairest flowers are not always the *sweetest.* What a splendid horse, I never saw a *finer!* The English racehorses are the *fleetest.* According to the proverb, the Turks of Egripo, and the Jews of Salonica, are the *worst* of their respective races.

371. *One,* as a substitute for a noun, and without an adjective, corresponds to the German einer.

It is more charitable to kill than to scorn; to call *one* knave than fool. I look upon quarrelsome people in the same light as I do a loaded gun, which may go off and kill *one.* To *one* given to day-dreaming, a sea voyage is full of subjects for meditation. It is good to have a friend to protect *one* in the hour of danger or difficulty.

372. *One* is used to translate the German pronoun man. (See rule 376—4.)

373. *One's,* the genitive of *one,* corresponds to the German sein, when used in an indefinite sense.

Whatever may be *one's* philosophy, it is difficult to suffer a long time without repining. An excellent method of exalting *one's* self is to exalt *one's* equals. To be blind to *one's* own faults, and clear-sighted with regard to those of others, is the sign of a narrow mind. It is *one's* duty to communicate *one's* knowledge. To tell *one's* own

secrets is folly, to tell those of others is treachery. To change *one's* country is little more than to remove from one street to another. There is something, I think, much more vulgar than eating peas with a knife, and that is insolence to *one's* inferiors.

374. *One* means the same as *a certain.*

The old gentleman asked me if I knew *one* Salomon Flamborough in my part of the country. I knew *one* Martin, who was a great man in his own town.

375. *The one* is frequently used instead of the demonstrative pronoun *that.*

I like his piano better than *the one* I bought. This gun is not so good as *the one* I purchased in London.

The German Pronoun man.

376. The corresponding pronoun *one* being but seldom employed, the German man must be translated in various ways according to the sense.

1. By *we,* when that which is affirmed may include the speaker.

If *we* do good without seeking praise or reward, *we* shall obtain both at last. *We* have many medicines and few cures, and many cures without medicines. To raise esteem *we* must benefit others; to procure love, *we* must please them. *We* are often too dissatisfied with *our* condition and too well satisfied with our abilities. *We* should accommodate ourselves as much as possible to the temper of others.

2. By *you,* when the person spoken to may be included.

If *you* put a musical snuff-box, upon an inverted tumbler, *you* hear the music much more distinctly. If *you* look at a waterfall, with the sun at your back, *you* will see a part of a rainbow. In the Swiss canton of Aargau, *you* may see to this day the ruins of the old castle of Habsburg. Wherever *you* go in Liverpool, *you* see traces of Roscoe in all that is elegant and liberal.

3. By *they,* when both the speaker and the person spoken to are excluded.

It is easier, *they* say, to destroy than it is to restore. *They* drink much strong tea in England. *They* ought to have given her a small pension. *They* smoke much in Germany. *They* say that the Queen will be there. Second thoughts, *they* say, are best.

4. By *a man, men, people, one,* in a more indefinite sense, when the sentiment expressed may be applied to all mankind.

A man must either imitate the vicious or hate them. A contented mind is the greatest blessing *a man* can enjoy in this world. When *a man* has no occasion to borrow, numbers are willing to lend. *A man* has no more right to say an uncivil thing than to act one. *Men* should seek their happiness in themselves. The long feast had at length its end, and while the goblet circulated freely, *men* talked of the feats of the preceding tournament. *Men* often go from love to

ambition, but seldom from ambition to love. *One* may observe that women in all ages have taken more pains than men to adorn their heads. It is an undoubted truth that the less *one* has to do, the less time *one* finds to do it in; *one* can do it when *one* will, and therefore *one* seldom does it at all. What *people* style greatness, glory, power, is in the eyes of God only misery.

5. By the passive verb, when that which is said is in a very general sense, and not applicable to a limited number of persons.

The total absence of light *is called* darkness. Before the palace *were seen* two mortars and six cannons, all made of ice. The Athenians *are acknowledged* to have been courteous and amiable in private life. The compass *may be said* to have opened to man the dominion of the sea. *It may he said* that the prosperity of Buonaparte evaporated in the smoke of Moskow. *It will* readily *be imagined* that the prejudices which have passed the name of Macchiavelli into an epithet proverbial of iniquity, exist no longer at Florence. That night, on every hill within sight of Durham, signal fires *were seen* to blaze.

6. Occasionally, but not often, by some other words, such as, *a person, any one, a body, somebody.*

But what is *a person* to do in such a case? *Somebody* knocks. What is *a body* to do if he can't understand? Is it possible that *any one* can believe such folly?

Possessive Pronouns.

377. The adjective possessive pronouns are generally employed instead of the article, when reference is made to any part of the person, or dress, especially when there is a dative case in German.

At the sound of his voice she clasped *her* hands, and uttered a faint shriek. One of the maiden aunts whispered something in *her* ear. The stranger shook *his* head silently, but positively, at every offer. He bit *his* lip, as I looked steadfastly in *his* face. The bull defends himself with *his* horns, the horse with *his* feet, and the dog with *his* teeth. Put the knife into *your* pocket.

Observation. Occasionally the German form of expression is used. I looked *him in the* face. I tapped *him on the* shoulder. He took *him by the* arm, and walked with him up the street.

378. The preposition *at* must never be put before the personal pronoun to translate the German expressions bei ihm (ihr, mir &c.); in this case the possessive pronouns with the name of the locality which is understood must be employed.

I was at *his house.* I supped at *his rooms.* It was bought at *their shop.* At *her house* much time is wasted in frivolous amusements.

379. The substantive possessive pronouns are used instead of the personal pronouns, when the person possesses more

of the objects mentioned. In this case the article *the* must never be employed, but the article *a*, or some word, such as *some, several,* expressing an indefinite number.

Longfellow was *an* intimate friend *of mine.* I found *some* cows of *his* in my garden. *Several* horses of *his* brought a high price. It is *no* business of *mine* to meddle with other men's affairs. *A* neighbour of *mine* told me the news.

Observation. This construction is also allowable with the pronouns *this, that.* I will make, thought king Henry the Second, *this* Chancellor *of mine* Thomas à Becket, Archbishop of Canterbury. He gazed ardently on *that* ingenuous, open face *of hers.* O let me look in *those* dark eyes *of thine.*

380. The substantive possessive pronouns are sometimes used absolutely at the beginning of a sentence, the object to which they refer being mentioned in another part of the sentence.

Mine was a strange fate. *His* was a singular life. *Hers* was not the foolish fondness of a foolish aunt. *Yours* has been a strange, eventful life. *His* were great faults.

381. *Mine* and *thine* are frequently used in poetry before a vowel instead of *my* and *thy.*

Since *mine* eyes beheld thee, blind I seem to be. Ask *thine* own heart. Many were the deaths of *thine* arm, Cuthullin, thou son of Semo!

382. The word *own* is sometimes added to the possessive pronouns to give more emphasis to the idea of possession.

She had a large fortune of *her own.* Whose horse is that? My *own.*

The Reflective Pronouns.

383. The reflective pronouns are employed when the doer of the action is also the receiver of the action; in other words, when the same person is both nominative and accusative to the verb.

He who reforms *himself* does more to reform the public than a crowd of noisy patriots. *I* will apply *myself* more to acquire knowlege than to show it. *Leonidas* considered *himself* as a willing sacrifice offered up for the good of his country. It is the part of the lyric *poet* to abandon *himself* without reserve to his own feelings. Socrates thought *himself* an inhabitant and citizen of the whole world. She threw *herself* at the feet of the captain general. We will not take upon *ourselves* the invidious task of settling precedency between such writers as Dante and Milton. In proportion as we value *ourselves* we diminish our estimation of others. The great Latin orators constantly proposed to *themselves* as patterns the speeches of Demosthenes and Lysias. Knaves speak of *themselves* as they think proper; good men are content to speak properly of *themselves.* Vanity, when it makes men value *themselves* upon good actions, is no despicable quality. You injure *yourselves* by injuring others.

384. When the plural pronoun *you* is used in addressing one person, the corresponding pronoun is *yourself*. In like manner the singular *ourself* is employed, when *we* is used by one person in speaking of himself.

To know *yourself* you have only to make a true statement of those who have ever loved or hated you. When you do good to another, you may be sure that you are doing good to *yourself*. We will *ourself* look into this matter. It is well, said Prince John, to-morrow we will *ourself* conduct this mute sovereign to her seat of dignity.

385. The German ſich, when used indefinitely with an infinitive, or the pronoun man, is translated by *one's self*.

To reform *one's self* is the best manner of reforming others. To show *one's self* moderate in prosperity is the highest degree of wisdom. We are commanded to love one's neighbour as *one's self*. If one wishes to excel, one must apply *one's self* diligently to one branch of study. To excuse in *one's self* the follies which one cannot excuse in others, is to prefer being a fool *one's self* to seeing others such.

386. With prepositions the personal pronouns are used instead of the reflective, the pronoun and the preposition forming an adverbial expression.

War brings *with it* numberless evils. He caused the gate to be shut *behind him*, to delay the progress of his pursuers. The General said he would take *upon him* all responsibility. The boy held his hands clasped *before him*. Look at the desolation that war leaves *behind it*. Do not keep truth a prisoner, even though you should draw *upon you* a crowd of enemies.

387. The substitution of the personal pronoun takes place sometimes even when the pronoun is the direct object of the verb.

He that hath *bent him* o'er the dead,
Ere the first day of death is fled.

I laid *me* down to die, but was saved by the owner of the house, who heard my groans.

388. *Each other* and *one another* are used when the action of the verb is reciprocal.

Philosophy, wisdom and liberty support *each other*. If we must lash *one another*, let it be with the manly strokes of wit and satire. They departed dissatisfied both with *each other* and themselves. He proved how beautifully commerce and intellectual pursuits may be brought to benefit *each other*. The wounds which Frederic the Great and Voltaire had inflicted on *each other* were too deep to be effaced. Love *one another!* The thieves accused *one another*. In this life we should endeavour to assist and help *one another*. It is much to be regretted that nations make war upon *each other*.

389. The emphatic pronoun may be placed at the end of the sentence, or, for the sake of greater emphasis and distinctness, immediately after the noun or pronoun to which they belong.

I took two fowling-pieces *myself*, and gave him the rest. He that cannot forgive others breaks the bridge over which *he* must pass *himself*. We are very apt to censure others, where *we* would not take advice *ourselves*. *Solomon himself* did not understand all things. Money *itself* cannot purchase health. Death *itself* is sometimes a relief from the miseries inflicted by a hostile world. *I myself* think so, but others may not. Pride retains its vigour a long time, and rarely expires but with *life itself*. His *majesty himself* put the vase into my hands.

390. With the emphatic pronouns the personal pronouns are sometimes omitted.

Constantine was a few years older than *myself*. It is Rip van Winkle, it is *himself*. *Myself* will do what thou refusest. He unfortunately confided in persons less able than *himself*. *Myself* shall mount the rostrum in his favour. The wicked always think other people as bad as *themselves*.

391. The word *self* is sometimes used substantively.

Eustathius, besides his own dear *self* valued but one thing in the world — namely, money. Neither discovered any fault in *self* though the defects in the other were very visible to each. A true friend is another *self*.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

392. *This* refers to the nearest of two objects, *that* to the one which is more distant. If only one object is mentioned, which is at some distance from the speaker, then *that* is employed.

Look on *this* picture and on *that*. What are the joys of *this* world when compared to those of eternity! Do you know *that* man yonder? Give me *that* book.

393. *That* and its plural *those* are used to refer to a noun previously mentioned in the sentence.

The *force* of steam is 28 times greater than *that* of gunpowder. A good *government*, like a good coat, is *that* which fits the body for which it was designed. We travelled through *scenes* like *those* of an English park. The excitement of love is the same as *that* of hate, only in a contrary sense. The best tin mines in England are *those* in Cornwall. The *pleasures* of the wise resemble in nothing *those* of a dissipated man.

Observation 1. *The one* is used as a substitute for *that*. (See rule 375.)

Observation 2. The possessive case is more frequently used in familiar language than *that, those,* when a person possesses something. (See rule 288.)

394. The adjectives *former* and *latter* supply the place of the German dieſer and jener, when referring to two things in the same sentence. (See rules 329, 330.)

The advantage which talent has over beauty is that *the former* pleases at all times, *the latter* has but one time to please.

Observation. In this case, however, *this* and *that* are sometimes used.

Idleness and industry produce very different results; *this* leads to comfort and respectability, *that* to want and degradation.

395. The demonstrative pronouns in an accessory sentence cannot, like the German dieſer &c., refer to a person in the principal sentence. In this case the personal pronouns are employed.

I wrote to the lady's sister, but *she* did not deign to answer my letter. I applied to the Captain, but *he* could give me no redress.

396. *This* and *these*, with the perfect tense, express duration of time, and answer to the German ſeit.

I have not found all the benefit I expressed at Scarborough, where I have been *these* six weeks. I have known him *these* six years. I have been waiting for you *this* hour.

Observation. *For* is frequently used to express the same idea. She had felt *for* some months past that her days were numbered. (See *for* among the prepositions — 4.)

397. The demonstrative pronouns are used absolutely, the noun to which they refer being in another part of the sentence.

Those were happy days. *These* are thy glorious works. *That* is the fruit of procrastination.

Relative Pronouns.

398. *Who* refers only to persons and things personified.

The *man who* can live in dishonour is unworthy of life. Those men *who* wish to make themselves feared, seldom make themselves beloved. Every one admires Homer and Vigil, *who* were the best poets of antiquity. He alone deserves the name of a great statesman, *whose* principle it is to extend the power of the people in proportion to the extent of their knowledge. O thou, Parnassus, *whom* I now survey.

Observation. The genitive *whose* is however, frequently made use of in speaking of things and animals.

None are pleased with an eye *whose* colour is dull. The portal, *whose* archway was dimly lighted up.

399. *Which* refers to animals and inanimate things.

Tacitus informs us that songs were the only *memorials* of the past *which* the ancient Germans possessed. By the continual motion of the air, noxious *vapours*, *which* are destructive to health, are dispersed. The *metal which* glitters is not always gold. No *animal which* has blood can be without a heart.

400. With collective nouns which refer to persons, *who* is used in reference to single persons, and *which* to the whole as a body.

The only uneasiness I felt was for my family, *who* were to be humbled without such an education as could render them callous to contempt. The London clergy, *who* were then universally acknowledged to be the flower of their profession, held a meeting.

Lycurgus made the whole of his community a standing *army*, every member *of which* had a common right to the services of a

crowd of miserable bondmen. He was the founder of a dynasty *which* has ruled the land for centuries. He put down the *factions which* opposed his schemes. Such was the *party which* overthrew the ministers. Lambert commanded the *cavalry which* pursued the fugitives. I rushed into the *crowd which* surrounded her carriage.

401. The genitive *of which* is usually placed after the noun to which it belongs.

The Greek drama, on the *model of which* Milton's Samson Agonistes was written, sprang from the ode. With sly gravity the Norman knights and nobles beheld the ruder demeanour of Athelstane and Cedric at a banquet, to the *form* and *fashion of which* they were unaccustomed. A tumult ensued, in the *midst of which* the king was hurriedly crowned.

Observation. Of which, when it refers to a noun which is the object of an active verb, may sometimes be placed before the verb and noun.

There were some valuable articles *of which* I hastened to secure *the possession.*

402. *That* is used instead of *who* and *which:*

1. Indiscriminately, according to the taste of the speaker.

He *that* gives for gain destroys the very intent of bounty. Virtues are essences *that* lose their fragrance when exposed. He that visits the sick, in hopes of a legacy, is like a raven *that* watches a weak sheep only to peck out its eyes.

2. To avoid the too frequent repetition of *who* or *which.*

A volume *which* contains more words than ideas is like a tree *that* has more foliage than fruit. The lady *whom* you saw is not the lady *that* I mean.

3. When persons and things are mentioned in the same sentence.

He was dissatisfied with the riches and the wife *that* fell to his lot. The lady and the dog *that* were in the carriage.

4. After the interrogative pronoun *who?*

Who *that* has lost an object dear to the affections, but has felt the self-reproach with which we turn from the first indications of forgetfulness? Who *that* has read the history of Mary Queen of Scots does not pity her faults and her misfortunes?

5. After the superlatives of adjectives.

A contented mind is the *greatest* blessing *that* a man can enjoy. Money is the *most* useful servant *that* we can have, but the most tyrannical master. Virtue is the *surest* road to happiness *that* we can take. The *best* protection *that* a prince can have is the heart of his subjects. Hannibal was perhaps the *greatest* general *that* the world ever saw.

6. Usually after the indefinite pronouns.

None was ever a great poet *that* applied himself much to any thing else. *No* flocks *that* range the valley free to slaughter I condemn.

403. *That* can never take a preposition before it; either *who* or *which* must be employed, or the preposition may be placed at the end of the sentence.

He who calls a man ungrateful sums up all the evil *that* a man can be guilty *of*. The gentleman *that* I came *with* was Mr. B., the banker. The expenses *that* he was led *into* ultimately ruined him.

404. *What* is synonymous with *that which*.

What distresses me most is to see guilt triumphant. And *what* is still more admirable with such a small organ as the eye, we perceive the largest objects with it. Do not be ashamed to ask concerning *what* you are ignorant of. The effect of Milton's poetry is produced not so much by *what* it expresses as by *what* it suggests. Meditation is to the mind *what* a perspective glass is to the eye. Bad news flies fast, but *what* is good walks on crutches. From the wise you may learn *what* will improve you, from the foolish *what* you ought to avoid. *What* is got by force must be maintained by force. Germany is very different now from *what* is was when Tacitus described it. *What* is astonishing is not always *what* is pleasing.

405. *What* can never refer to a sentence or any word preceding it.

At this she smiled, *which* he acknowledged with a bow. He requested permission to renew his visit, *which*, as he was our landlord, we most readily agreed to. At this compliment he bowed, *which* she returned with a curtsey. Timoleon bore prosperity more wisely than adversity, *which* is thought a more difficult thing. He was silent, *which* only enraged his adversary the more. *All that* I have is at your service. That *which* I most desired I could not obtain.

406. *What* — *what* answer to the German theils — theils.

What with money, *what* with persuasion, I induced him at length to agree to our scheme.

407. *Which* is used of persons or things to point out one or more among a certain number.

I do not know *which* book you mean. I know *which* man is best fitted for the place, but I cannot tell *which* will be chosen. I cannot tell *which* lady pleased him best.

408. *What* is also used of persons or things, but in a more indefinite sense than *which*. It corresponds in most cases with the German welcher, was für, was für ein.

What wonders of creation are seen in the exact revolutions of the heavenly bodies! It is incredible to those who have not experienced it, on *what* scanty aliment human life and human love can be supported. A physician ought to know *what* are the sound and healthy functions of an animal body, and *what* are the distempers and dangers which attend it. *What* a delighful day! Tell me in *what* affair you require my advice. He did not say *what* music master he employed. I know *what* lady he meant.

409. *What* is used adjectively for *that* (those), *which*.

I sent him *what clothes* I could spare. I gave her *what money* I had about me. He collected *what men* he could for the defence of the castle.

410. In the accusative case, and when no ambiguity of meaning arises from it, the relative pronouns may be omitted.

Humility is a *virtue all preach*. Censure is the *tax a man* pays to the public for being eminent. The *protection he relied on* was too

weak. The first *work William* had to do was to conquer the English thoroughly. To follow the fashion, though at a respectful distance, is a *duty we owe* to society. Cyrus said that he was unworthy of commanding who was not better than *those he* commanded. The *poems Cicero* wrote are lost.

Observation. The accusative can never be omitted when the sense requires the relative sentence to be enclosed between commas; as, my protection, *which* he relied on, was too weak.

411. With *there is, there are,* the relative is sometimes omitted, even in the nominative.

There is *nothing makes* a man suspect much more than to know a little. There 's not a *friend will* mourn my lot. There 's not an *eye will* weep for me. Is there *aught* in sleep *can* charm the wise?

412. The relative and the copulative verb are frequently omitted before adjectives and participles.

It will be received with the *respect due* to the ambassador of a great king. He was going to salute my daughter, like *one certain* of a kind reception. On the *day appointed* for the ceremony. He arrived at the *hour fixed.* We met at the *place agreed upon.*

413. The prepositions may be placed before the relative, or at the end of the sentence; but if the relative be omitted, then the preposition must be put at the end.

The man *of whom* I spoke. The man *whom* I spoke *of.* The man I spoke *of.* There are little vices and small crimes *which* the law has no regard *to,* or remedy *for.* It is with wits as with razors, which are most apt to cut those *upon whom* they are employed, when they have lost their edge. Ingratitude is one of the greatest wrongs *that* a man can be guilty *of.* A good-natured man has the whole world to be happy *in.* The thing in this world I am most afraid *of* is fear. The king gave him a small pension, *which* he lived *upon,* and died *upon,* in peace. A death-bed repentance is but a weak plank to trust our all *upon. Whose* eyes have I gazed fondly *on,* and loved mankind the more. I want a box to put my things *in.*

Interrogative Pronouns.

414. *Who* refers only to persons.

Who does not admire the writings of Macaulay? In *whose* reign was America discovered? *Whose* opinion shall I ask? *Whom* shall I love above all? By *whom* was Queen Elizabeth succeeded on the throne of England?

415. *Which* refers to one or more objects among a given number, and is employed both of persons and things.

Which of us is without fault? *Which* actor do you prefer, Kean or Macready? *Which* is the older, the queen or her husband? *Which* book will you have?

416. *What* corresponds to the German was?

What is so hateful to a poor man as the purse proud arrogance of a rich one? *What* is flattery that so many should be pleased

with it, though none acknowledge it? *What* is man that thou art mindful of him?

417. *What* being more indefinite than *which*, often corresponds to the German welcher? was für? was für ein?

What assurance had the Long Parliament that Charles would not break the laws he had passed? *What* man was ever satisfied with his condition and dissatisfied with his abilities? *What* advantage shall I gain by it? Now I have hopes. *What* hopes?

Determinative Pronouns.

418. It has been already stated that these pronouns do not form in English a separate class (see rule 211). The following examples will illustrate the use of the pronouns corresponding to the German.

He who will not reason is a bigot; *he who* cannot a fool; and *he who* dares not a slave. *He* is rich *whose* income is more than his expenses. You may sooner expect a favour from *him who* has already done you one than from *him to whom* you have done it. Petrarch's poems in the ancient language, though much praised by *those who* have never read them, are wretched compositions. Time moves quickly, but to *those whose* only occupation it is to watch its flight, its progress is slow. *She who* spoke to you is my sister. *Those who* govern are like the celestial bodies, they emit splendour, but are never at rest. Fortune and applause will not make *him* great *whom* opposition and adversity have left little. A tide is *that* motion of the water in the seas and rivers by *which* they are found to rise and fall in a regular succession. The melancholy of Dante resembled *that* noxious Sardinian soil, *of which* the intense bitterness is said to have been perceptible even in its honey.

419. In solemn language the personal pronoun is sometimes omitted.

Who steals my purse, steals trash. *Who,* under pressing temptations to lie, adheres to truth, is near the summit of wisdom and virtue. *Who* is deaf to the calls of duty and honour must renounce the hope of gaining the respect of his fellow-men. *Who* could not feel as I do, I condemn; *who* feeling so, yet would not act as I shall, I despise.

420. *Such* — *as* is frequently used in English for the German determinate pronouns.

Pope's life passed in *such* prosperity *as* few men of genius have attained by their own efforts. *Such* as talk much, generally say many things that had better been left unsaid! I pity *such* persons *as* will only associate with those of higher rank than themselves. *Such* of the doctrines of the Gospel *as* are level to human capacity appear to be agreeable to the purest truth and the soundest morality.

Indefinite Pronouns.

All.

421. *All* corresponds to the German all.

I said in my haste *all* men are liars. The powers of music are felt or known by *all* men. I said that at sea *all* is vacancy. We were *all* very tired. *All* his relations are rich. Money is said to be the root of *all* evil. *All* is lost, except honour. Of *all* plants the truffle seems to be the lowest in the scale of vegetation.

422. *All* answers to the German ganz.

She has been to me *all* tenderness and devotion. A wife is *all* devotion to her idol, provided he is content to be happy by no others means than those she provides. *All* nature slept in deep repose. The soil is *all* sand. I am *all* attention. *All* the week. *All* day.

423. Unlike the German all, *all* requires the article *the* after it, when the following noun is used in a definite sense.

We shall never be able to penetrate *all the* secrets of Nature. I gave him *all the* money I had about me. I would not do it for *all the* gold of California.

424. *The whole*, though frequently synonymous with *all*, denotes rather one object, as a mass, while *all* usually refers to the number of objects.

I have not read *all the* books in my library. He was obliged to sell *the whole* of his library. I have not seen him *the whole* week. The sun illumines the *whole* earth with his light.

425. *The whole* before a proper noun must always be followed by *of*, whereas before a common noun it may be used adjectively.

The *whole of* London. The *whole of* May and June. The *whole of* Monday and Tuesday. The *whole* town. The *whole* month. The *whole* day.

426. Idiomatical expressions with *all*.

It is all the same to me. Not at all. I gave him nothing at all. You will be all the better for a good night's rest. When all comes to all. At all events. By all means. All day and all night. First of all. All of a sudden. All at once. I thought so all along. It is all over. It is all over dirt.

Any. Some.

427. *Any* is used in questions and with the adverb *not*.

Have you *any* wine? I have not *any* here. Is there *any* thing whiter than snow, or sweeter than honey? Have you *any* friends in London? I have not *any* in London, but I have some in Paris.

428. *Some* is employed in simple affirmative sentences.

I have *some* good wine. The good humour of *some* is owing to an inexhaustible fund of self-conceit. It is safer to affront *some* people than to oblige them. *Some* became Crusaders for the love of change, *some,* in the hope of plunder; *some,* because they had nothing to do at home; *some,* because they did what the priests told them; *some* because they liked to see foreign countries; *some,* because they were fond of knocking men about, and would as soon knock a Turk about as a Christian. Most men are born with *some* taste, but spoiled by education. *Some* are unwisely liberal and give presents, but do not pay their debts.

429. *Any* is also used in affirmative sentences, in which case its meaning is more extended and indefinite than that of *some.*

Air may be vitiated by remaining closely pent up in *any* place for a considerable length of time. One of the best rules in conversation is never to say a thing which *any* of the company can wish we had rather left unsaid. The avaricious man has no friend, because he has no friendship for *any* man. The more *any* one speaks of himself, the less he likes to hear another talked of. It were better to be of no church than to be bitter for *any.* Before you undertake *any thing* take proper measures to ensure success. We ought never to speak ill of *anybody* in their absence. Henry I. took *any* means to gain his ends. There is more variety of characters and speeches in the Iliad than in *any* other poem.

430. *Some* may also be used in a question, but with a more definite signification than *any.*

Will you take *some* wine or beer? Was there not *some* brandy in the bottle? Can I offer you *some* beef or some veal?

Observation. The question, *will you have any wine or beer?* asks whether the person wishes anything to drink; the question, *will you have some wine or beer?* supposes that the wishes something to drink, and enquires whether it is to be wine or beer.

431. *Some* is used when reference is made to one or more particular objects, and not to any indefinite one of the same class.

Get *some* strong man to carry it. It was certainly *some* great lady who gave it him. It is rather a praise than a disgrace not to know *some* things.

Both. The two.

432. *Both* means der Eine ſowohl wie der Andere, alle beide. It must be placed before the article, or demonstrative and personal pronouns.

Both these rivers mix their waters with those of the Amazon. *Both the* brothers are dead. *Both those* girls are my sisters. Treat every stranger as a friend; every friend as a stranger; and treat them *both* as they deserve. Henry the eighth persecuted *both* religions. *Both* gentlemen were present. There are few men who use *both*

hands in the same manner. *Both my* brothers. *Both his* houses are sold.

433. *Both* can never be employed when the action of the verb is reciprocal between two persons; nor when any word such as *each, either, neither, one, which,* is used to refer to one of the two objects separately: in this case *the two* must be used.

The two sisters love *each other. The two* rivers *meet* about a hundred miles from the sea. *Which* of *the two* was the more intrepid, Caesar, or Alexander? *Each* of *the two* brothers agreed to give up something of his claims, and that the *longer-liver* of *the two* should inherit all the dominions of the other. *Which* is the greater fool of *the two,* the spendthrift or the miser?

Observation. Both can never be substituted for *the two* in these examples, but where *both* is employed *the two* may generally be used instead of it.

Each. Every.

434. *Each* refers to the single objects of a given or limited number.

Each of his children will have a thousand pounds. Give those boys sixpence *each.* At *each* end of the room stood a large iron stove. We shall *each* of us receive the reward to which we are entitled. *Each* of us has his faults, and *each* should endeavour to correct his own. Cassius and Brutus were defeated at Philippi, and *each* of them put an end to his existence. Every grain of sand, when examined by the eye, appears round, but with the help of a glass we see that *each* grain differs from the others. I stood in Venice on the bridge of Sighs, a palace and a prison on *each hand.*

435. *Every* refers to an unlimited number, and cannot be used without a noun or pronoun.

In the first ages of the world *every* father governed his children with an absolute power. *Every* man who heads a rebellion against an established government stakes his life on the event. The strength of Milton's imagination triumphed over *every* obstacle. *Every* one censures or praises according to his particular aversion. *Every* body must see and feel that bad thoughts lead to bad actions. *Every* one takes more care of himself than of others. Is not *every* thing in nature perfect in its kind? *Every* man has his foibles, *every* plant its virtues. The President of the United States is chosen *every* four years. The census is taken in England *every* ten years.

Either. Neither. One of the two.

436. *Either* and *neither,* though, strictly, speaking, they refer to two objects only, are however frequently used of more than two.

You may stop at *either* of the hotels I have named. Is *either* of his daughters married? The truth may lie on *either* side, or *neither* side. Have you seen *either* of these three towns? No *neither*. *Neither* of my sisters was at the ball. Does *neither* of you know?

437. *Either* places the choice of objects at the option of the person spoken to; *one of the two* limits the choice to the will of the speaker.

You may have *either* of these books (namely, whichever you please). You may have *one of the two* (namely, whichever I may choose to give you). *Either* of you may go.

438. *Either* is used poetically instead of *each*.

On *either* side of the river the rocks rise to a great height. There is a splendid fountain on *either* side of the pillar.

Much, many; little, few.

439. *Much* and *little* take cognisance of quantity.

Much adversity is requisite to make us hate life. To say *little* and perform *much* is the characteristic of a great mind. How *much* pleasure does the ignorant man lose! He does not drink *much* wine. Very *little* money will suffice where there is a contented mind. Where there is *much* talk there is often *little* understanding. He who has *little* money has generally few friends. Warden had *little* money and *less* influence.

440. *Many* and *few* refer to number.

„O liberty, how *many* crimes are committed in thy name!“ were the dying words of Madame Roland. We have *many* medicines and *few* cures, and *many* cures without medicines. Simple diet is best, for *many* dishes bring *many* diseases. Pride hurries *many* a man to get out of debt, fear prevents *many* from getting into it. *Many* servants, like the besoms they use, are good only for a *few* days. Benevolence is allied to *few* vices; selfishness to *fewer* virtues. Sincerity is found in *few* people. *Few* have the courage to correct their friends, because *few* have the courage to suffer correction.

441. *Little* and *few* are used with the article *a* to express a larger portion or number than is denoted by *little* and *few* when used alone.

A little wine is not injurious to health. He has *a few* good qualities. *A few* books will be the best present you can make. He has *a few* good friends.

Where *little* is given, *little* will be required. He who is hungry wants *little* sauce. *Few, few* shall part where many meet. He has *few* good friends.

442. The German ſehr viele, with reference to number, is always expressed by *a great many;* ſehr viel, with reference to quantity, frequently by *a great deal of*, and ziemlich viel, by *a good deal of*.

I have *a great many* kind friends. He gave himself *a great deal of* trouble in my behalf. I have had *a good deal of* care and sorrow.

No, none.

443. *No* is used before a noun.

A true philosopher, like an impartial historian, must be of *no* sect. Milton's spirits are not wicked men; they are not ugly beasts; they have *no* horns, *no* tails, none of the fee — faw — fum of Tasso and Klopstock. A vain man is so full of himself that he has *no* room for anything else. Love sees what *no* eye sees, and hears what *no* ear hears. Those beings only are fit for solitude who like *nobody*, are like *nobody*, and are liked by *nobody*. *No* author or man ever excelled all the world in more than one faculty.

444. *None* is employed alone.

Have you no money? No, *none*. Ennius speaks of the verses which the Fauns and the Bards were wont to chant in the old time, when *none* had yet studied the grace of speech, when *none* had yet climbed the peaks sacred to the Goddess of Grecian song. *None* was ever a great poet that applied himself much to anything else. *None* are free from sin. Death pities *none*.

445. *No* is used less frequently than the German kein.

I do not like tea. I am not an Englishman.

Other.

446. *Other* is used adjectively, and also alone, taking in the latter case the sign of the genitive and an *s* in the plural. It is frequently joined to the article *an*, in the word *another*.

The alchymist was deeply versed in Behmen and *other* Rosicrusians. It is one thing to possess knowledge, and *another* to be able to communicate it. Do not neglect the first opportunity of paying your debts, for *another* may never occur. The greatest gift that we can bestow on *others* is a good example. We take greater pains to persuade *others* that we are happy than in endeavouring to think so ourselves. Anger on account of *another's* faults is characteristic of a narrow mind. He surely is most in want of *another's* patience who has none of his own. The man that is faithful thinks it better to be his friend's prisoner than any *other's* general. We all require the help of *others*. Accomodate yourselves as much as possible to the temper of *others*. He that does good to *another* man does good to himself.

447. Examples in which *other* is not to be translated by ander.

I shall wait *another* day. Give me *another* glass of wine. I met him in the street the *other* day. Do not say *another* word.

448. Examples in which ander is not to be translated by *other*.

That is quite a *different* thing. Nobody *else* would do it. I have nothing *else* to give him.

Such.

449. *Such* is employed both with a substantive and alone. In the singular it takes the article *a* or *an* after it.

I have never seen *such* haughty pride. I am a citizen, and *such* I wish to remain. How could you come to *such* a conclusion?

450. *Such,* followed by *as,* is frequently used instead of the German determinate pronoun derjenige &c. (See rule 420.)

Fire dilates *such* bodies *as* are exposed to its influence. The earthquake which destroyed Lisbon in 1755 was preceded by a rumbling noise, which increased to *such* a decree *as* to equal the explosion of loudest cannon. Laws are like nets of *such* a texture *as* the little creep through, the great break through, and the middle size are alone entangled in. *Such* vessels *as* could be got ready were immediately despatched.

451. *Such* is used to translate the German expression der und der.

Mr. *Such* a one.

Verb.

Agreement of the Verb with its Subject.

452. The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

Leonidas *was* heroic. A *crowd* of men *was* present. The Hymalayan *mountains are* more than five miles high. The wages of sin *is death.* His only food *are vegetables.* It is *I* who *am* chosen. *Eight legions were* the principal strength of the empire. A *part* of the good *consists* of wool. The greatest part of *mankind employ* their first years to make their last miserable.

Agreement in Number.

453. Two or more subjects in the singular, joined by a copulative conjunction, require the verb in the plural.

Chronology *and* geography *are* called the eyes of history. Ignorance *and* idleness *lead* to vice. The first *and* second volumes *are* already published.

454. When two or more subjects in the singular are separated by a disjunctive conjunction, the verb must be in the singular.

Neither astrology *nor* alchymy *deserves* the name of science. To boast of our own knowledge, *or* to despise those who know less, *is* the sign of a narrow mind. Neither precept *nor* example *is* so forcible as habit. Man's happiness *or* misery *is* in his own hands. Henry *as well as* his brother, *is* gone to America. Not only he, *but* his brother too, *was* ruined by speculations.

455. When there are two or more subjects in a sentence, and the first is in the singular, the verb must be in the singular, provided that the verb and subject form a complete sense. If the other subjects are required to complete the sense, the verb must be in the plural.

Diligence, like faith, *removes* mountains. Their *religion*, as well as their customs, *has* been misrepresented. *Health*, with enough to live upon and an amiable wife, *is* all I require. The *prince*, as well as his family, *was* to blame. The *king*, with the *lords* and *commons*, *form* an excellent frame of government. The *captain* with his *men* *were* taken prisoners.

456. The pronouns *it* and *that*, used impersonally, cannot, like the German es and das, take the verb in the plural. If the verb must be in the plural, the pronouns *those* and *they* must be employed.

That is a pretty drawing. *Those are* pretty drawings. It *is* a fine horse. *They are* fine horses. *Those were* happy days. Fineness, closeness, whiteness, smoothness, *those are* the qualities which are regarded in paper.

457. Collective nouns require the verb to be in the singular or plural, according as they imply unity or plurality.

The *public has* long been agreed as to the merit of Milton's poetry. In vain the whig *ministry overwhelms* us with its victories. The *parliament is* dissolved. A *troop* of cavalry *was* sent off. The *meeting was* large. The *family was* rich. The *company has* already been formed. The *party was* broken up. The assembly *was* very noisy. The *fleet was* dispersed.

A *people have* often repented, a monarch seldom or never. The *committee were* divided in their opinions. The people *have* no opinion of their own. The *peasantry go* barefoot. The *company are* come. The *nobility are* very exclusive. The *audience were* attentive. The *congregation were* lost in admiration of the preacher. The cattle *were* driven to their pasture.

458. Some nouns when used figuratively with a plural signification, require the verb in the plural, while retaining the form of the singular.

Seventy *head* of cattle *were* sold. There *were* twenty *sail* of the line in the Channel. Nearly five hundred *horse* and two thousand *foot were* killed. 150 *cannon* and many wagons of ammunition were taken by the allies.

459. Some few nouns have a plural termination, but, being singular, require the verb in the singular.

Has news been received from the Crimea? This means *was* adopted and it succeeded. And so at length this *amends was* made me. A summons *was* sent him. (See rule 174.)

460. The words *pair, couple, brace, dozen, score* require the verb in the singular when used alone, and in the plural when followed by *of* and the noun to which they refer.

A couple *was* sent me from London. A dozen *is* not enough, a score *is* too many. What *do* a dozen of eggs cost? I have bought a pair of gloves, they *are* of the best quality.

Agreement in Person.

461. When there are two subjects of different persons, the verb agrees with the first person in preference to the second and with the second rather than with the third.

What thou and *I have* said proves to be true. I and my father *are* going to the seaside. *Your* and your sister *have* been to London, have you not?

462. When the nouns are in the singular and are separated by *nor*, or *or*, the verb usually agrees with the noun which is nearest to it.

Either I or thou *hast* done it. Neither you nor your brother *was* there.

463. With the relatives who or that, the verb is in the same person as the word to which the relative refers. (See rules 353 and 357.)

I that *have* done so much for him, — to be treated in this manner! Who art *thou* that thus *presumest? He* who *comes* first shall have it. It *is I* who *am* to speak. *I* am the person who *object* to it. I am *the person* who *objects* to it. I am *he* who *has* to command here.

Auxiliary Verbs.

464. When a predicate has to be repeated in a sentence, or in the answer to a question, the auxiliary only is used, the verb being omitted.

Have you seen the verses? Yes, I *have*. Do you recollect what words are written over the verses? Yes, I *do*. Shall you go to-morrow? Yes, I *shall*. The Earl of Chatham possessed great genius, and *so did* his son William Pitt. You ought to avoid his company. Why *ought* I? England is much richer than she *was* before losing her American colonies. He complains; yet why *should* he? Who could not feel as I *do*, I condemn; who feeling so, yet would not act as I *shall*, I despise.

465. The auxiliary verbs are used to translate the German nicht wahr?

1. After a negative sentence containing an auxiliary.

You are not happy there, *are you?* He cannot swim, *can he?* Commerce was not in great estimation among the Romans, *was it?* You would not be too tired, *should* you? You will not go, *will you?*

2. After an affirmative sentence containing an auxiliary.

You are happy there, *are you not?* He can swim, *can he not?* You must go, *must you not?* Persecutors are hated by those whom they oppress, *are they not?* You ought to pay him, *ought you not?*

3. After negative and affirmative sentences containing verbs.

Fact alone does not constitute right, *does it?* I do not underrate his talent, *do I?* He did not speak well, *did he?* The train starts

at one, *does it not?* He arrived safe, *did he not?* I speak the truth, *do I not?*

466. The auxiliary is omitted in exclamations.

What! *I kill* the sacred cows of Brama! Wardour *take* advantage of a fallen foe! No, I cannot believe it. But why *ask* forgiveness of one whose heart is stone! My own children thus *to desert* me!

467. The defective auxiliary verbs never take the preposition *to* after them, with the exception of *ought.*

She *can play* the piano. *May* I *go?* Thou *shalt* not *kill.* I *must obey* his commands.

Observation. The verbs *dare* and *need* belong to this class. He *dared* not *kill* the infidel with fire or steel in Europe. None but the virtuous *dare hope* in bad circumstances. Poverty has in itself so many hardships that we *need* not *increase* their number by unnecessary pride and insolence.

To be.

468. The present and imperfect tenses of *to be* are used before the infinitive mood of a verb to express an action which depends on the will of a third person, and not on that of the speaker. In German the verb ſollen is used in this case.

What *am* I *to do* with these things? *You are to take* them to Mr. B. *Was* I *to have* gone? They *were* afterwards *to meet* more than once on the field of battle. You *are,* gentlemen, *to decide* without regard to any consideration but truth and justice. Tell him he *is to be* there at ten o'clock. You *are* not *to despise* a man merely because he is wanting in talent, for it is not his own fault. *Are* the Carthaginians *to be* released from the most important articles of the treaty as a reward of their breach of faith? If men *are to wait* for liberty till they become wise and good in slavery, they may indeed wait for ever.

469. The present and imperfect tenses of *to be* are used before the infinitive of a passive verb to translate the German müſſen, können or ſein, with the infinitive of the active verb.

Utensils made of copper or brass *are* if possible *to be avoided* for culinary purposes. Books *are* never *to be judged* of merely by their subjects, but by the justness of their sentiments and the strength of their reasoning. Religion *is to be felt,* not proved. The cravings of ambition *are* never *to be satisfied.* There *were to be seen* the masterpieces of art. Perfect happiness *is* not *to be found* on this side the grave. Knowledge *is to be gained* only by study.

470. *To be* in the imperfect of the subjunctive, is used instead of *should* with a future signification, before an infinitive.

If the emperor *were to die,* the state would be thrown into convulsions. If the bill *were* not *to pass,* there would be disturbances in the great manufacturing towns. If it *were to rain,* I should remain at home. If I *were to give* you advice, you would not follow it. If the

learned of antiquity *were to come* to life again, they would be astonished at the extent of our knowledge. *Were* an inhabitant of the earth to ascend into the air a hundred and sixty millions of miles, the fixed stars would still appear no larger than luminous specks.

471. The verb *to be* and its subject are frequently omitted, especially after a conjunction.

He was nephew to the Earl of Chatham, who wrote him letters *when a* boy. What would you do *if in* his place? He could not bear the sight of misery, *whether* real or feigned. It will be received with the *respect due* to the ambassador of a great king. I saw him leaning his head on his hand as *if in* pain. Gulliver's travels was one of the first books that gave me delight *when a* child. I purpose to write the History of England from the accession of King James the Second down to a time which is within the memory of *men still living*. The issue of the marriage, *if a* son, was to succeed. The ring of Saturn, *when viewed* through a telescope, appears double.

472. *To be* between two infinitives answers to the German verb heißen.

To abscond *was* to make every body believe him guilty. To remain *would be* only to expose ourselves to still greater danger. To be angry *is* only to revenge the faults of others on ourselves.

473. The imperfect and pluperfect of *to be* are frequently used to mark motion, and may therefore take the preposition *to* after them.

Where have you been? I have been *to* the theatre. I had been *to* the post when I met you.

474. In many expressions *to be* must be used for the German verb ſtehen.

It *is* in the newspaper. It *is* not in my power to assist you. Remove the table; it *is* in my way. I will use all the means that *are* in my power. He is under the orders of an inspector.

475. Idiomatical expressions with *to be*.

The microscope endows us, *as it were*, with a new sense. The union of our families by marriage can never *be*. I *am* right. I *am* in the right. I *am* early. He *is* likely to get the place. How *are* you? I *am* well. *Are* you at leisure? His fortune *is* at stake. He *is* at his wit's end. I *am* in great pain. *Are* you in a hurry? He *is* on duty. I *am* on good terms with him. I *am* out with him. He *is* out of place. I *am* out of all patience with him. I *am* about it now. I *am* at a loss to know what to do. I *am* in great want of it. I *am* at a stand. It *is* of no use talking. I *am* under the necessity of refusing.

To have.

476. *To have*, with an accusative case after it, can be followed by a verb in the infinitive without the preposition *to*.

We often *had* the traveller or stranger *visit* us to taste our gooseberry wine. I will *have* these players *play* something like the murder of my father. Wouldst thou *have* a serpent *sting* thee twice?

477. *To have* takes an accusative case after it, which is followed by a participle, either active or passive.

The Templars became popular all over Christian Europe, and *had* immense possessions *assigned* to them, in England especially. Alone of all the European princes, Frederic *had* a treasure *laid* up for a day of difficulty. It has been my good or evil lot to *have* my roving passion *gratified*. She *had* continual lectures *read* to her about strict decorum. We shall *have* him *coming* for his money.

Observation. *To have* is used in this manner to translate the German verb laſſen. (See rule 519.)

478. *To have* takes an infinitive after it, in which case it has the same meaning as *to be obliged, to need.*

He *had to pay* a very heavy fine. If you take so much luggage with you, you will *have to pay* for it. I hope I shall not *have to wait* long for him. You *have* only *to confess* your fault, and I am sure he will forgive you.

479. *I had* is often inelegantly used for *would* in the expressions *I had rather. I had as lief.*

I had rather confess a fault than add another to it by a lie. *I had as lief* stay here as go to London. *I had rather* be a dog and bay the moon, than such a Roman.

Observation. *I'd*, used in conversation, is a contraction of *I had*, as well as of *I would*, hence *I had came* to be used instead of *I would.*

480. Idiomatical expressions with *to have.*

The dwarf *had* like to have been killed more than once. You *had* better go yourselves. He will have it that I am wrong.

May. Might.

481. *May* and *might* express probability, or a possibility not dependant on physical power, and are translated by können.

Time, like money, *may* be lost by unseasonable avarice. The beauties of nature are open to all, and *may* be enjoyed by all. Victories and conquests *may* render the name of a man famous, without rendering his character truly honorable. Whenever a man's friends compliment him about looking young, he *may* be sure that they think he is growing old. You *may* dress a beautiful woman, but you cannot ornament her. The humblest fortune *may* grant happiness. It *may* rain, therefore I shall stop at home. The blaze of truth and liberty *may* at first dazzle and bewilder nations which have become half blind in the house of bondage. It is by no means improbable that some Latin minstrels *may* have visited Sybaris, or Cistona, *may* have heard some verses of Archilochus sung, *may* have been pleased with the metre, and *may* have introduced it into Rome. She believed he *might* once have been a very fine gentlemen. If Jerusalem could have been won by personal strength or courage, it *might* have been won by Richard. William III. *might* have passed for one of the best princes of the age in which he lived, had he never as-

cended the throne of Great Britain. Robert had virtues that *might* have made a better and a happier man. I *might* fill a volume with the reveries of a sea voyage. From the despotism of St. Petersburgh to the democracy of Washington, there is scarcely a government which *might* not, in some hypothetical case, be the best possible.

482. *May* and *might* express a direct permission, or a moral permission, the thing permitted not being contrary to reason or duty, and answer to the German dürfen.

May a man benefit himself at the expense of another? You *may* enjoy the pleasures of the world if you like, but you should not give yourself up entirely to them. A man *may* not be the slave of pleasure. You *may* go or stay, whichever you please. *May* I ask what is your name? *May* I offer you some wine? The Egyptians *might* not eat bread with the Hebrews. Any young lady *may* read that book.

Observation. The imperfect *might* is seldom used to translate durfte, for which *was allowed* is generally used; as, I *was not allowed* to drink wine or beer during my illness.

483. In all other cases *may* and *might* answer to the German verb mögen.

With whatever surprise we *may* contemplate the strength of the elephant, we shall be more astonished if we examine the minute parts of the mite. Inconceivable as it *may* appear, it is a fact that a mite on a cheese is as large in proportion as a man on the earth. The people are to be governed for their own good, and that they *may* be governed for their own good they must not be governed by their own ignorance. Eschines *may* have been an honest man; he was certainly a great man. Abstain that you *may* enjoy. We believe what we desire to be true, however unreasonable it *may* be. *May* they understand at last that without internal peace there is no happiness. *May* God preserve the right. That he *might* remove every suspicion, Maximian resigned the imperial purple a second time. That he *might* divide his time exactly, Alfred had wax torches made, which were notched across at regular distances.

484. The German verb mögen is not in all cases to be translated by *may* and *might*.

No, no, I *will* not (mag nicht), your liberty is at stake. He does not *like* to work. I do not like tea. Who *would* not be young again if he could? Men *would* be angels; angels *would* be gods. I should like to see him.

Can. Could.

485. *Can* and *could* express a physical capability, or a moral power so strong as almost to amount to a physical one.

It is sacred principle of the English constitution that the king *can* do no wrong, his ministers being responsible for his actions. It is impossible to conceive that the mechanism of language *can* be brought to a more exquisite degree of perfection than in the Allegro and Penseroso of Milton. The only poem of modern times which *can*

be compared to the Paradise Lost is the Divine Comedy. Nothing *can* be more imposing than the magnificence of English park scenery. Rules may obviate faults, but they *can* never confer beauties. *Can* you speak English? What controversy *can* she have read? Who would not love virtue for its own sake, *could* he see it in all its beauty? I knew that she *could* not live much longer. I *could* not help expressing my surprise. If ever despondency and asperity *could* be excused in any man, it might have been excused in Milton.

486. *Can* being used only in the present and imperfect tenses, the remaining tenses of the German können must be translated by *to be able.*

We *shall* never *be able* to penetrate all the secrets of Nature. I *have* not *been able* to convince him. It is agreeable *to be able* to speak several languages. I *should* not *be able* to undergo the fatigue of the journey.

Shall. Should.

487. *Shall* is used in the first person, also in the second person interrogatively, to imply futurity.

I will study ten years and travel ten years; I *shall* then be learned, and *shall* therefore be honoured. I *shall* always follow Reason whithersoever she may lead me. I *shall* obey your commands implicitly. When *shall* you return? *Shall* I find your brother there? We *shall* all return to the dust whence we were taken.

488. *Shall,* in the second and third persons, expresses the will or command of the speaker.

Thou *shalt* not steal. Thou *shalt* not bear false witness against thy neighbour. He *shall* answer for his conduct. You *shall* do it, whether you like it or not. You *shall* no longer be exposed to his insults. Thorns also and thistles *shall* it bring forth to thee; and thou *shalt* eat the herb of the field. The language of a moral law is, man *shall* not kill; the language of a law of Nature is, a stone will fall to the ground.

489. In subjunctive sentences, that is, when a simple indicative statement is not made, *shall* expresses futurity also in the second and third person. This is particularly the case after the conjunctions *after, as, according as, as soon as, as often as, if, that, till, until, unless, when, whenever, whether,* and the relative pronouns.

Subjunctive.	*Indicative.*
What man is he that lived and *shall* not see death?	Every man that liveth *will* see death.
Children, when they are grown up, are bound to observe such regulations of the family *as* the father *shall* appoint.	The father *will* appoint the regulations of the family.
But *when* ye *shall* hear of wars and rumours of wars, be ye not troubled.	Ye *will* hear of wars and rumours of wars, but be ye not troubled.

He must yield to the force of truth *when* they *shall* have suffered it to appear in its real light. If thy brother *shall* trespass against thee, go and tell him his fault between thee and him alone; *if* he *shall* hear thee, thou hast gained thy brother. God forbid that there should ever again exist a powerful and civilized state, like Venice, *which,* after existing through 1300 eventful years, *shall* not bequeath to mankind the memory of one great name, or one generous action. They could not destroy all witnesses, even if they wished, for as long as the world *shall* exist there will not be wanting some one to accuse them. It is thou, O liberty, whose taste is grateful and ever will be so, *till* Nature herself *shall* change. *Whosoever shall* spare the bad hurts the good. Do not act before you know *whether* you *shall* approve his plan or not. *When* I *shall* have heard your decision, I am to pronounce sentence accordingly. *If* your judgment *shall* be that the prisoner is guilty, I am to remand him to the castle of Spandau. *When* those who have rivalled her greatness *shall* have shared her fate; *when* civilization and knowledge *shall* have fixed their abode in distant continents; *when* the sceptre *shall* have passed away from England; — the glory and influence of Athens will still survive.

Observation. This use of *shall* is confined to elegant prose; in conversation it is omitted altogether; thus we could say with equal correctness; Whosoever spares (shall spare) the bad hurts the good. When I have (shall have) heard your decision. If your judgment be (shall be) that the prisoner is guilty.

490. *Should* is employed in the first person, and also in the second person interrogatively, to form the conditional tense of the verb.

I *should* place little reliance on his word. I *should* go to town if I thought it would not rain. I *should* think it would be difficult to find in history a more amiable character than that of Lady Jane Grey. What *should* you answer, if he were to ask you? *Should* you enjoy yourself in the country? *Should* you be able to do it?

491. *Should* in the second and third persons implies duty or obligation.

The heart of a wise man *should* resemble a mirror, which reflects every object without becoming sullied by any. Fools *should* not have weapons of offence. Books, like friends, *should* be few and well chosen. The expression of simple thoughts *should* be plain, but not clownish. Many praise that which *should* not be praised. If you spend more than you *should,* poverty will stare you in the face. You *should* have told me that before. They *should* not have acted so foolishly. Charles the first, too, it *should* always be remembered, was put to death by men who had been exasperated by the hostilities of several years. The Muses, it *should* be observed, are Grecian divinities.

Observation. Should sometimes implies duty also in the first person, and the context can alone decide whether it is the conditional tense, or whether duty is implied.

We *should* envy nobody. We *should* do to others as we would they should do unto us. We *should* feel sorrow, but not sink under its oppression.

492. *Should* is used in subjunctive sentences, in all three persons, and is to be translated sometimes by werden, sometimes by ſollen.

To this my girl replied *that* she *should* have no objection if she could do it with honour. You told me *that* you *should* not remain long. Otho had hoped *that* he *should* be adopted by Galba, and was expecting it from day to day. A man who pronounces a constitution to be good, without an exact knowledge of the people who are to be governed by it, judges as absurdly as a tailor *who should* measure the Belvedere Apollo for the clothes of all his customers.

Milton was desirous *that* the people *should* think for themselves as well as tax themselves. We cannot wonder *that* the ballads of Rome *should* have altogether disappeared, when we remember that, in spite of the invention of printing, our own nearly had the same fate. The oracle had declared it was necessary that a king *should* die for the safety of Greece, and this was undertaken by Leonidas. In a free state it is fit *that* the mind and the tongue *should* be free. It was agreed *that* Stephen *should* retain the crown. He feared *lest* he *should* break down in his discourse. He proposed *that* we *should* take a walk in the park. God is not a man that he *should* lie; neither the son of man that he *should* repent. Is it probable that the same man *should* be both ingenuous and mean?

493. The German ſollen, expressing an opinion or report, is frequently translated by *to say* used both personally and impersonally.

Eudoxus was a great geometrician and astronomer, from whom Euclid *is said* to have borrowed great part of his elements of geometry. Bacchus *is said* to have married Ariadne after she was basely deserted by Theseus. Silk *is said* to have been brought from Persia into Greece, 323 years before the birth of Christ. Pisistratus and Themistocles *are said* to have owed much of their influence to their talents for debate. The fabled apples on the brink of the lake Asphaltes *were said* to be fair without, and, within, ashes. *It is said*, indeed, that the appointment of Sophocles to a military command was the reward of a successful tragedy. *It is said* that Caesar was of tall stature, fair complexion, dark eyes, and sound health. *It is said* that we cannot resist fate. *It is said* that the Count is going to be married.

494. When the German ſollen is used without a verb, the sentence takes another form in English.

What does that mean? waß ſoll daß? Here I am; what do you want with me? waß ſoll ich?

Will. Would.

495. *Will* in the first person expresses the will or determination of the speaker.

Through my life it shall be my settled resolution, that *I will* never depend upon the smiles of princes, that *I will* never stand exposed to the artifices of courts. It is disgraceful not to keep a promise, therefore *I will* keep mine. I *will* always observe the laws of the country in which I live. On this rock I *will build* my church.

Observation. *Will* is not used interrogatively in the first person; we say, *shall we go?* and never, *will we go?*

496. *Will*, in the second and third persons, forms the simple future tense of the verb.

Homer *will* teach us when to be simple, and when poetical and figurative, if we will but follow his footsteps. Look at this rose, how beautiful it seems, how sweet it smells, and yet it *will* fade in an hour. The avaricious man *will* never be contented. A just man *will* wrong nobody. They *will* remain in London till August. I hope you *will* keep your word. I fear you *will* lose much time. The husbandman plants trees, the fruit of which he *will* never see.

There is a day of vengeance still,
Linger it may, — but come it *will*.

497. *Would*, in the first person, and in the second person interrogatively, is used in the conditional tense, instead of *should*, when the action depends on the will of the speaker, or the person spoken to.

I *would* injure no man, and should provoke no resentment; I *would* relieve every distress, and should enjoy the benedictions of gratitude. I *would* rather shed tears myself than make others shed them. We *would* willingly assist him, if we were not embarrased ourselves. We *would* pay you immediately if we had the money. I *would have* done it, if I had not been prevented by illness. *Would you* renounce being useful to the present generation, because envy fastens on you? I love truth so much that I *would* sacrifice every thing for it.

Observation. This frequent use of *would* in the first person of the conditional tense is very embarrassing for the learner, who has been taught that *should* forms the first person of the conditional tense. It is necessary to remark that if the action is independant of the will of the speaker, *would* can never be used. Thus, in the first of the above sentences, *I would injure no man*, and, *I would relieve every distress, would* expresses the will of the speaker, but *I should provoke no resentment*, and, *I should enjoy the benedictions*, express actions over which his will has no control. Again, we can say, *should you go out if it were fine?* but also, *would you go out if it were fine?* because the going out may depend on the will of the person asked, but we can only say, *should you have much pleasure there?* because the having pleasure does not depend on the will of the person interrogated.

498. *Would* in the second and third persons makes a simple statement in the conditional tense, without reference to will or determination.

Who, a thousand years ago, *would* have thought it possible to distinguish myriads of living creatures in a single drop of water? The vultures, seen by Romulus, promised that Rome *would* be a warlike city. *Would* any old woman have been so mad as to trust to dreams, if they did not sometimes come true? Varro says that the Muses, if they had wished to speak Latin, *would* have spoken in the language of Plautus. Shakspeare alone *would* confer immortality upon any language.

499. *Will* and *would* are employed in all three persons to express determination, when a particular emphasis is laid upon them in speaking.

There are two kinds of debtors; those who cannot pay and those who *will* not pay. Mr. Merton pressed the farmer to accept the

present, but he *would* not. He *would* go in spite of all I could do to prevent him.

500. *Will* and *would* are used to express a habit or custom, and answer to the German pflegen.

From this little nest his fiddle *will* often be heard, drowsily sawing some long forgotten tune. The weather gave indications of one of those sudden storms that *will* sometimes break in upon the security of a summer voyage. Mahomet *would* be seized, said some of his biographers, with violent trembling, followed by a kind of swoon, during which perspiration *would* stream from his forehead in the coldest weather; he *would* lie with his eyes closed, foaming at the mouth and bellowing like a camel. On such occasions Prince John *would* start up, quaff a cup of wine, and then mingle in the conversation.

501. *Will* and *would* forming, in the second and third persons, the future and conditional tense of the verb, and it not being always proper to lay a stress upon them according to rule 499, the German wollen must often be translated by other verbs. The principal verbs used for this purpose are to want, to wish, to desire, to intend, to like, to please, to choose, to be about, to be going, to be willing.

If you *want* to flatter a fool, ask his advice; if you *wish* to make yourself his equal, follow it. Robert of Normandy *wanted* to raise a number of armed men, and to go to the crusade. Somebody *wants* to speak to you. If you *desire* to acquire a good reputation, be always mindful of your duty. He threw the money down, as if he *intended* to make him a present of it. When do you *intend* to start for the continent? Do whatever you *like*. You may enjoy the pleasures of the world if you *like*, but in moderation. Do as you *please*. Harry said he did not *choose* to betray the infortunate. It is better to suppress a witticism which *is about* to escape us than to hurt anybody, whoever it may be. He *was about* to go as I entered. What *was* he *going* to do? If Jupiter had *been willing* to speak the language of men, he would have spoken like Plato.

502. To render the use of *shall, should, will* and *would* as clear as possible, we give the following tables.

Futurity.		*Conditional Tense.*	
I shall go.	We shall go.	I should go.	We should go.
Shalt thou go?	Shall you go?	Shouldst thou go?	Should you go?
Thou wilt go.	You will go.	Thou wouldst go.	You would go.
He will go.	They will go.	He would go.	They would go.

Will and command.		Will and duty.	
I will go.	We will go.	I would go.	We would go.
Thou shalt go.	You shall go.	Thou shouldst go.	You should go.
He shall go.	They shall go.	He should go.	They should go.

Observation. The learner must impress these forms thoroughly in his mind, and then read over again rules 489, 492, 497, 499, 500.

Must.

503. *Must* has no imperfect, and refers to the past only when joined to the perfect of another verb.

The most imaginative man *must* understand the Iliad. The speeches in Milton's Comus *must* be read as majestic soliloquies. A heavy hat *must* be disagreeable. Mons. de la Motte confesses that in whatever age Homer had lived, he *must have been* the greatest poet of his nation. We *must* injure nobody. We *must* flee with all speed.

504. *Must* is not always to be translated by müſſen, nor can müſſen, on the other hand, always be translated by *must.*

Want money, that *must* be impossible. (Das iſt ja unmöglich!) But the snow will be melted, sir, by that time. Well then, it *must* be melted. (Laß ihn ſchmelzen.) I cannot help laughing (ich muß immer lachen) at him, when I see him.

505. The tenses of the verb müſſen, which are wanting in English are supplied by the verbs *to be obliged, to be forced, to be compelled* and *to be constrained.*

The nobles *were obliged* to build castles all over England to defend their new property. But you were ill, mamma, and so I *was forced* to remain at home. He was *compelled* to submit.

Ought.

506. *Ought* expresses a moral obligation or duty. It always takes *to* after it and like *must* has no imperfect tense.

We *ought to* consider time as a sacred trust committed to us by God. No war *ought to* be undertaken but under circumstances which render all interchange of courtesy between the combatants impossible. It was happily said that Montesquieu *ought to* have changed the name of his book from L'esprit des lois, to L'esprit sur les lois; in the same manner the philosopher of Palmyra *ought to* have entitled his famous work, not Longinus on the sublime, but the sublimities of Longinus.

Observation. The German verb ſollen is translated by *ought* when a moral duty is expressed; as, We *ought* to speak the truth. By *should* when the speaker commands; as, You *should* do as I do. By *to be* with an infinitive when a third person has commanded; as, You *are* not to stay too long. By *to say* when an opinion or report is expressed; as, He is said to be rich. Should and ought have, however, nearly the same meaning. (See rules 468, 491, 493.)

Dare and Need.

507. *Dare* and *need* are often used as auxiliaries, in which case they do not take *s* in the third person, and have the infinitive without *to* after them.

He *dare* not appear before those whom he has so deeply injured. She *dare* not take such liberties. Glow-worms sparkle through the night, but *dare* not stand the test of day. How *dare* you do what has been so strictly forbidden. She *need* not be so impatient, there is plenty of time.

Observation 1. Dare has both *dared* and *durst* in the imperfect; as, She *dared* not write to apprise him, still less *durst* she trust a messenger. To dare (herausfordern) is always regular; as, She *dares* me to do it?

Observation 2. *To need,* meaning to *require* has always *s* in the third person; as, The army *needs* provisions.

Do.

508. *Do* is used, in the present and imperfect tenses, to ask a question, when there is no other auxiliary in the phrase.

Do we not perpetually see men of the greatest talents and the purest intentions misled by national prejudices? *Do* you live to eat, or *do* you eat to live? *Do* men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles? Does not practice give confidence, what have you then to fear? What does that mean? *Do* you speak English? *Did* anything remarkable take place during the regency? How *did* Henry the eighth commence his reign? In what year *did* Columbus discover America? To what extent *did* the Republicans carry their persecution? „What *dost* thou fear? thou hast Caesar on board," said Caesar to a pilot who was alarmed at the greatness of the danger.

Exceptions. 1. *Do* is not used with the pronouns *who, which, what,* when they are in the nominative, and not accompanied by the adverb *not.*

Who succeeded Charles the second? *Which* of the English kings reigned the longest? *What* European powers engaged in the war? *What* happened then?

2. In solemn language *do* is frequently omitted.

Thinkest thou you sun will set?

509. *Do* is used in the present and imperfect tenses, and in the imperative mood, with the adverb *not.*

Simplicity of appearance *does not* exclude profoundness of intellect, or great experience. I *do not* know whether Scott will like it, but I have called him the „Ariosto of the North". Milton *does not* paint a finished picture; he sketches and leaves others to fill up the outline. For ourselves, we own that we *do not* understand the common phrase, — a good man but a bad king. Cromwell *did not* require that the chief magistracy should be hereditary in his family. Epaminondas was such a lover of truth that he *did not* utter a falsehood, even in jest. Do you know him? No, I *do not.* Did you see him? No, I *did not. Do not* speak ill of an enemy, for it will be ascribed to prejudice, not to truth. *Don't* make a noise. The ancient philosophers *did not* neglect natural science, but they *did not* cultivate it for the purpose of increasing the power and ameliorating the condition of man. *Do not,* I conjure you, *do not* shed Alonzo's blood!

Exceptions. 1. In poetical and solemn language *do* is frequently omitted. Forsake me *not,* O Lord! She saw me not, — she heard me not, — alone upon the mountain's dizzy brink she stood.

2. When *not* does not qualify the verb, *do* is omitted.

He torments *not* only himself, but his whole household. Is all lost? I hope *not*. Does Alonzo fear death? I think *not*. I try *not* to deceive you.

510. *Do* is used with other negative adverbs only when, for the sake of emphasis, they begin the sentence.

Nor does he (Sophocles) appear to have keenly shared the party animosities of his day. *Never did* the genius of Frederic, shine forth more conspicuously. (See rule 277.)

511. *Do* is frequently used in the perfect and imperfect tenses, and in the imperative mood, to give greater emphasis to the verb.

Do but think, how sweet it is to wear a crown; within whose circle is Elysium, and all that poets feign of bliss and joy. We should spare ourselves much pain, *did* we know how to moderate our desires. For three and sixty years *did* Sophocles continue to exhibit, and twenty times he obtained the first prize. Thou, who on Panama's brow *didst* make alliance with the raving elements, when thou *didst* follow the crashing thunder's drift — meet and survive an injured woman's fury, if thou canst. Do, do make haste, I beg of you! Why did you not say so? I *did* say so. Why did you not write? I *did* write.

512. *Do* is employed as a substitute for the verb already used in a sentence, to avoid the repetition of that verb.

Why do we not *follow* virtue with the same ardor that we *do* vice? You do not *know* that man as I *do*. I begin to *think* that I am not so much better than others as I used *to do*. He did not *know* so much then as he *does* now. She plays most divinely on the harpsichord, *talks* French even better than she *does* English, and draws in the style of a master. The animalcules in a drop of water *swim* about with as much ease as whales *do* in the ocean. No lady ever *consulted* her mirror with more anxiety than the American Indians *do* while painting their bodies. *Choose* your friends as you *do* your wife namely, until death separate you. Had Jupiter wished to *speak* the language of men, he would have spoken as Plato *did*.

513. *Do* is never used with an auxiliary verb, nor with the verbs *dare* and *need*, when used as auxiliaries.

I *will not* wear them. I *cannot* find it. You *must not* forget. For a belief that the souls of the dead inhabit the form of birds we *need not* travel to the East. She *dared not* disobey his commands.

Observation. But *do* can be used with *to have* and *to be* in the imperative; as, *do not be* so troublesome. *Do not have* any intercourse with him.

514. Idiomatical expressions with *to do*.

How do you do? That will *do* very well. I have *done* writing. I have *done* with him for ever. He is *done* for. The meat is not *done*. The meat is *underdone, overdone*. He will *do* well in America. He is well *to do* in the world. Let me *do* my hair. *Do* it over with varnish.

The German verb laſſen.

515. The German verb laſſen, according to the sense in which it is used, is translated into English by various verbs. They are *1. let, suffer, allow, permit, 2. cause, 3. make, 4. get, have, 5. bid, order, command.*

516. *Let, suffer, allow, permit,* require after the object which they govern the active or the passive infinitive, according as that object is the doer or the receiver of the action. *Let* does not take *to* after it.

Let me do it. *Let it be done.* She would not suffer any *woman* who did not belong to her family, *to enter* the apartment. She would not *suffer* the *room to be entered.* I *allowed him to make* use of my name. He would not *allow his name to be used* for such a purpose. *Permit me to go* with you.

517. *Cause* follows the same construction as *suffer allow* and *permit.*

Edward the fourth founded many public schools, and *caused them to be endowed* out of the church lands. William the conqueror *caused* all *England to be surveyed.* Themistocles *caused* a hundred *gallies to be built.* Boileau, hearing that Louis the fourteenth had exposed himself too much, said to him, I beg you, Sir, as your historian, not *to cause me* to *finish* your history so soon. The account of his misfortunes *caused* her *to weep.*

518. *Make* requires the infinitive of the active verb only, and without *to.* It can be used only when the object of the verb is active.

Self loves *makes us love* those who are useful to us. What does not the love of fame *make man undertake!* His confused behaviour *made me believe* that he was guilty. She *made me blush.* She made *him do* it over again.

519. *Have* takes only the passive participle of the verb after it; *get* takes also the participle, but it may be employed with the infinitive of the active verb. *Have* can be used only when the object of the verb is passive.

William *had a great survey made* of all the land in England. That he might divide his time exactly, Alfred *had torches made,* which were notched across at regular distances. I will *have a box made.* You ought to *have had it done* before.

Henry was carrying his five thousand pounds safely away in a *chest* he had *got make. Get it mended* immediately. I will *get my brother to do* it. I will *get my brother to buy* me one.

520. *Order* and *command* have the same construction as *permit* &c. *Bid* requires the omission of *to.*

William *ordered whole villages and towns to be swept away,* to make forests for the deer. Alexander *ordered the ambassadors of Darius to be conducted* through his camp, they might inform their king of what they had seen. The judge *ordered the Jew to remain* in court. *Bid him come* to me as soon as he can.

Government of Verbs.

521. The following neuter verbs take a noun after them which is in the same case as that which precedes them: *to acknowledge, to arise, to appear, to be, to become, to be born, to commence, to continue, to die, to go, to grow, to lie, to live, to look, to prove, to reign, to return, to remain, to roam, to seem, to sit, to stand, to turn, to wander.*

Homer has ever been *acknowledged* the *greatest of poets. He appeared* a *giant* in stature. *Hannibal became* the *scourge* of Rome. *He commenced* a rich *man* and *died a beggar. He continued prime minister* till the death of the king. *He* is *grown* a *coward. Elizabeth* desired no worthier epitaph than that she *lived* and *died* a *virgin queen. He looked* a *prince* if ever actor did. Every noble had his strong castle, where *he reigned* the cruel *king* of all the neighbouring people. *He returned* an altered *man. He remained a miser* to the end of his life. *He sat* a silent *spectator* of the scene. Not knowing what to do *he* at length *turned schoolmaster.*

522. The following verbs govern a dative case of the person, and require the dative, without the preposition *to* to be put before the accusative: *to afford, to allot, to allow, to answer, to assign, to bear, to bring, to buy, to deny, to do, to forbid, to forgive, to give, to grant, to leave, to lend, to make, to offer, to owe, to pay, to permit, to procure, to promise, to reach, to read, to refuse, to render, to restore, to return, to send, to show, to sing, to spare, to teach, to tell, to tender.* (See rule 297 observation.)

The company *allotted each man* an acre of land. The king *allowed the prisoner* every possible means of reestablishing his character. *Answer me* directly. *Bring me* the book. You need not *deny yourself* those pleasures which leave no regret behind them. To have your enemy in your power, and yet to *do him* good, is the greatest heroism. *Forgive me* my faults. He will be grateful to his sovereign for having *granted him* this public trial. The Saxons, like many other nations in a rough state, were fond of *giving men* the names of animals. When they *offered Julius Caesar* a crown, he refused it. *Pay every men* what you *owe him.* He *refused me* his assistance. Philip *sent his queen* an ornament, a single diamond of which was valued at eighty thousand crowns. She had *shown him* tenderness in his captivity. In December a solemn embassy left Brussels to wait on Mary and *tender her* the hand of Philip. Who *teaches you* French?

523. The dative case in the foregoing rule may be regarded as an accusative, for the active verb may be changed into a passive one.

Essex sought an interview with Elizabeth, but *was denied* her presence. *You are forbidden* those pleasures, because you do not know how to use them in moderation. Julius *Caesar was offered* a crown. Every *man was paid* what was owing him. The *Persians*, from the age of five to twenty *were taught* only three things to manage the horse, to make use of the bow, and to speak truth. *I have been told* so many ill things of that man that I begin to suspect he has much merit.

524. For those verbs which govern the accusative in English, but a different case in German, see the list at the end of the book.

525. Some few intransitive verbs are occasionally used with an accusative case of a noun of similar meaning.

He *sleeps* a long *sleep* who never wakes. If you desire to live a happy life, let virtue be your guide. Many desire to *die* the *death* of the righteous. Pharaoh dreamed a dream. I have fought a good fight. He turned and *looked* one last fond *look*. We *went* a long *way* round.

526. Some intransitive verbs have also a transitive signification, which is rendered in German by a different verb, or by the help of laſſen or machen. Such verbs are *to cool, to drop, to grow, to hang, to march, to run, to sink, to slip, to walk, to gallop, to trot,* and others.

Cool the horse gradually by *walking him* up and down the yard. The hawk immediately *dropped his prey* and flew off. We cannot *grow melons* in the open air in our climate. He *hangs his head* as if he were ashamed of what he had done. Napoleon *marched an* immense *army* into Russia. I will not *run the risk* of being ruined for the sake even of considerable profit. They *sank* most of the enemy's *ships*. *Slip the collar* off the dog's neck. *Walk, trot, gallop the horse* round the field. I *enter my expenses* in a book I keep for the purpose. Will you *see* the *young ladies* home after supper? He *hurried me* away so that I had no time to speak to her. The vessel *sprang a leak*.

527. The impersonal verbs: *ail, become, befall, behove, concern, delight, grieve, import, irk, trouble,* govern an accusative case.

What *ails you?* It *behoves me* to obey my superiors. It *becomes you* to be silent in company. It *imports all men* to live in peace and concord. It *grieves me* that I have offended you.

528. The following verbs can take a double accusative after them: *to account, to acknowledge, to appoint, to approve, to argue, to ask, to believe, to bid, to breed, to call, to censure, to choose, to christen, to confess, to consider, to continue, to count, to create, to crown, to declare, to deem, to define, to denominate, to deny, to denote, to detain, to elect, to enrole, to enter, to fancy, to find, to hold, to keep, to judge, to leave, to make, to manifest, to own, to proclaim, to profess, to pronounce, to prove, to reckon, to remember, to repute, to salute, to see, to show, to speak, to style, to take, to think, to title.*

I *account him a fool.* We *acknowledge Homer the father* of poetical diction. The people *appointed Ancus Martius king.* I *bred* my *son a scholar.* I *consider you* an incompetent *judge.* The king *created* his *son Prince of Wales.* Anthony *called* his *flight victory,* because he had escaped alive. The Romans deemed scribes mer-

cenaries. He *defines man* a rational *creature*. They *elected him* a *member*. She gazed at the golden clouds *fancying them* some fairy *realms*. Homer *makes us hearers*, Virgil *leaves us readers*. I *pronounce him* a *traitor* to his country. The barons *proclaimed Prince Edward king*. He *professes himself* a *physician*, though unexperienced in medicine. I *remember him* a *boy*. I shall *reckon it* a *favour*. The soldiers *saluted him emperor*. A man cannot reform himself, if he *thinks himself* a *model* for others. Socrates *thought himself* an *inhabitant* and *citizen* of the whole world. Edward, the Black Prince, *took John*, king of France, *prisoner*.

Observation. The prepositions zu, als, für, which separate the two objects in German, are sometimes rendered in English by *as, for;* as, Chivalry was regarded *as* the school of honour. They were obliged to acknowledge the Romans *for* their masters.

529. When the verbs in the preceding rule are changed into passive ones, the second, or predicative, accusative, becomes a nominative after the verb.

Titus Larcius was appointed dictator about ten years after the first consuls. The *telescope is considered one* of the most useful instruments that was ever invented. *Pope* was ambitious *to be crowned king* of the poetical world. I visited the keep of the castle where *James* the First of Scotland *was detained* a *prisoner* of state. *Romulus was left* sole *possessor* of the sovereign power. *Maud* the Good was declared free to marry and *was made* king Henry's *queen*. *Rome was named* the eternal *city*. *Louis Buonaparte*, father of the present emperor of France, *was proclaimed king* of Holland in 1806. *Ingratitude is* generally *supposed* the *vice* peculiar to republics.

530. Some verbs of a similar kind to those in rule 522 are distinguished from them by not being able to take the preposition *to* after them at all; they take, therefore, strictly speaking, a double accusative, one of the *person*, and another of the *thing*.

We ought not to *envy the sensual man* his pleasures. A fool often *asks wise men* questions that they cannot answer. They *expelled him* the school for his bad conduct. The *debarred the prisoner* all intercourse with his relations. Fortune sometimes *plays men* very singular tricks. It *cost me* much time and trouble. I *forgave him* his fault. They *banished him* his country.

Observation. Expel, debar and banish take also the preposition *for;* as, They expelled him *from* the school. They debarred him *from* all intercourse. They banished him *from* his country.

531. A few verbs occasionally take *it* after them.

I can *walk it* without difficulty. He *lords it* over the whole neighbourhood. She *carried it* high. Let them *fight it* out. Come and *trip it* as you go, on the light fantastic toe.

Passive Verbs.

532. The preposition von, with the passive verb, is translated by *by*.

He who loves none but himself does not deserve *to be loved by* others. Hamlet *was written by* Shakspear. The exploits of Canute *were commemorated by* the Danes in rude poems.

533. All active verbs can be changed into passive ones.

Brutus *murdered* Caesar. Caesar *was murdered* by Brutus. Learned men *esteem* the Greek writers. The Greek writers *are esteemed* by learned men.

534. The verbs which in German govern the dative, and admit of the passive form only in the third person, can take it in English in all three persons.

Elizabeth *was succeeded* on the throne of England by James the Sixth of Scotland, under the title of James the First. The place could *be approached* only by a steep and rugged path. The common people of Rome *were flattered* by those who wished to attain high posts in the state. I *was* not *thanked* for all the trouble I took. Her cunning *was opposed* by still greater cunning. A brave general *is* always willingly *followed* by his soldiers.

535. All the verbs which take the dative without to after them (see rule 522) can take the passive form. Many of them can take a double form of the passive according as the *person* in the dative, or the *thing* in the accusative is made the subject of the sentence.

He gave me a book. I was given a book. A book was given me. They showed me a room. I was shown a room. A room was shown me. (See rule 523.)

Observation. When the thing in the accusative becomes subject the preposition *to* is frequently added; as, The money has been paid *to* him. A handsome reward was promised *to* him. The happiness I have enjoyed has been denied *to* my brother.

536. The verbs which govern a double accusative take the passive form. (See rules 528 and 529.)

537. Those verbs which take an accusative with an infinitive after them can be changed into passive verbs. (See the Infinitive.)

Homer is universally *allowed* to have had the greatest invention of any poet whatever. *No one has been heard* to swear that he saw Count Laniska write the world Tyrant. *Clouds are imagined* to consist of vapours exhaled from the sea and the land. *Northumberland was known* to be lukewarm. When America was discovered, the *mirrors* of the Peruvians *were found* to be of brass. When merit is relieved *none* save the meritorious *are found* to rejoice. One *grain* of gold *is made* by beating to cover fifty six square inches. At Athens a *drama* that had gained to prize *was* not *permitted* a second time to be exhibited. *Adversity* and *prosperity are* often *supposed,* but falsely, to include misery and felicity. *Paul* the Venetian, in 1260, *is* by some *supposed* to have been the inventor of the mariner's compass.

Observation. Those verbs which in the active take the infinitive without *to* must have *to* in the passive; as, I saw him smile; he was seen *to* smile. I heard him say; he was heard *to* say.

538. Neuter verbs which, by the addition of a preposition, have the power of active verbs can be changed into passive ones.

Hannibal perceived that he *was aimed at*, and that life ought not any longer to be retained by him. The humble man, without *being called upon*, never recollects to say anything of himself. His word is not *to be depended upon*. A treaty *was entered into* between the hostile nations. The steamer, the president, *was* never *heard of* again. Ireland *was* reproachfully *pointed at* by all who feared or envied the greatness of England. The town of Malvern is much resorted to in summer. Henry the First was so false, that I suppose a man never lived whose word was less *to be relied upon*. His weakness *has been taken advantage of*.

Neuter Verbs.

539. Neuter verbs, as well as active verbs, are conjugated with *to have*, but there are some neuter verbs which, when they express a state or condition rather than an action, may be conjugated with *to be*. The principal are *to arrive, to assemble, to become, to come, to decay, to degenerate, to elapse, to fall, to flee, to go, to grow, to pass, to return, to rise, to sink, to subside.*

Is your brother *arrived?* The company *are* all *assembled*. His importunity *is become* very troublesome. Three months *are* now *elapsed* since he left home. I will visit this land of wonders, and see the gigantic race from which I *am degenerated*. The tree *is grown* very much. The ship is sunk. The floods *are* subsided.

Observation. When these verbs do not express a state or condition they are conjugated with to have.

I *have* often *arrived* in London at night. We *have* already *assembled* twice in the same room. I *have* frequently *gone* to see him, but never found him at home.

Reflective Verbs.

540. The reflective verbs are used only when the subject, or acting person, is at the same time, the object or person acted upon.

I *wash myself*. He *made himself* master of every science. They *concealed themselves* in a cellar.

541. The English language has very few really reflective verbs, that is, such as admit of no other object than the person who is subject.

I *ingratiated myself* into his favour. I *availed myself* of his assistance. Many of the Greeks *betook themselves* to cultivating the rich vales of the Chersonesus. The archbishop, who had not been in favour at court for some time, *absented himself*. If he had bethought himself of the scheme earlier, he might have succeeded.

542. For the verbs which are reflective in German, but not in English, see the list at the end of the book.

Impersonal Verbs.

543. Impersonal verbs are those which have only the pronoun *it* as subject, which refers to no particular person or thing.

It snows. It rains. It is said the queen will come. It is light. It is Sunday.

544. Many verbs which are, or may be, used impersonally in German, are not so in English. The following are the principal.

I am anxious, I am afraid,	es iſt mir bange.
I am badly off,	es geht mir ſchlecht.
I am cold,	mich friert.
I am disgusted,	es ekelt mich.
I am giddy,	es ſchwindelt mir.
I am glad,	es freut mich.
I am hungry,	es hungert mich.
I am ill,	es iſt mir unwohl.
I am shocked,	mir graut vor.
I am sleepy,	es ſchläfert mich.
I am surprised,	es wundert mich.
I am thirsty,	es dürſtet mich.
I am unwell,	es iſt mir nicht wohl.
I am well,	es iſt mir wohl.
I dream,	es träumt mir.
I fare,	es geht mir.
I feel,	es iſt mir.
I like,	es gefällt mir.
I loathe,	es ekelt mir.
I do,	es geht mir.
I meet,	es begegnet mir.
I please,	es gefällt mir.
I pity,	es jammert mich.
I repent,	es reut mich.
I shudder,	es ſchaudert mich.
I succeed,	es gelingt mir.
I want,	es fehlt mir.
I wish,	es verlangt mich.
I wonder,	es wundert mich.

545. The verbs *to happen, to chance, to come, to appear, to grieve, to seem* are used both personally and impersonally, but more frequently the former.

It happened that he came just as I was going away. *He happened* to be there at the time. *It appears* that he cannot obtain reparation for the injury. *He appeared* to be under the influence of some delusion. *He* never *happened* to call at my shop for some time afterward. *I chanced* to meet him at Warden's. How *came you* to give so much for it? *It appears* that he is the author of the book. *He seems* to be tired. *It seems* that you are not aware of the difference. *It grieves* me to see him in that deplorable condition. *I grieve* to think that you have had all this trouble for nothing.

546. The impersonal verbs *meseems, meseemed, methinks, methought* are used only in poetical language.

Methinks already I your tears survey.

547. In German some neuter verbs are used with es as subject, in the passive or reflective form; this is not the case with those verbs in English.

There was dancing and singing. (Es wurde getanzt &c.) This is a nice room for dancing. (Es tanzt ſich gut &c.)

548. *It,* used impersonally, is always followed by the verb in the singular, even when the personal pronouns in the plural follow. (See rule 357.)

It *is* we who paid the money. It *was* three pounds that I gave.

549. The adverb *there* with the verb to be correspond to the German es gibt. (See rule 361.)

There will be much wine this year. *There are* persons who do not believe it.

550. The adverb *there* corresponds to the German es before neuter verbs.

There came a man. *There stood* a woman watching the crowd.

551. The impersonal verbs *befall, concern, ail, trouble, irk* govern the accusative case.

It *concerns me* much to know. It *troubles me* to think they should have been so unfortunate. What *ails you?*

Participles.

Active Participle in ing.

552. The active participle is used as a substantive.

Confessing a folly is an act of judgment, *lying* is a hateful vice. *Dancing* is to the body what taste is to the mind. *Learning* to construe Latin with a translation is like *learning* to swim with corks; it saves some pains at first, but the business is not done half so well. *Making* hay is a pleasant occupation. *Gaming* and *drinking* are the vices of a depraved mind. My *calling* him by name surprised him. His *having acquired* such wealth is owing to his industry and prudence. The captain's *having been repulsed* was no fault of his.

553. The active participle is frequently used as an adjective.

How many *flattering* hopes of parents are doomed never to be realized! Fly, O youth, from the *enchanting* allurements of a vain world. The brow of Prince John alone was overclouded, some *overpowering* care seemed agitating his mind. He wandered among the *mouldering* piles of Moorish architecture.

554. When the active participle is preceded by an article, it takes the preposition *of* after it.

The Phoenicians were acquainted with *the* making *of* glass, and were skilled in *the* working *of* metals. An important practical use which Franklin made of his discoveries was *the* securing *of* houses from injury by lightning. If a young writer has a propensity to be flippant, *the* reading *of* a page in Tacitus or Sallust is likely to sober him. The classical lore of some has ended in *a* spoiling *of* their mother tongue. Henry the fourth made a law for *the* burning *of* what the priests called hereties. If in this life a man's happiness arises from *the subduing of* his desires, it will arise in the next from the qualification of them.

555. When the participle partakes of the nature of a verb rather than of a noun, the preposition *of* may be omitted.

One of the greatest pleasures an author can have, is certainly *the hearing* his works applauded. This *treating servants* as if they were exotic flowers or China vases is ridiculous, said Marie.

556. The active participle is used with all the tenses of the verb *to be* to express the continuation of an action at a given period of time.

People cannot deny that mankind have made, and *are making* constant progress on the road which Bacon pointed out to them. While we *are reasoning* concerning life, life is gone. When a man imagines he *is acting* the hero, he is frequently only playing the brute. When we read Homer we ought to reflect that we *are reading* the most ancient author in the heathen world. What are you doing? I am writing a letter. While the French army *was marching* through the sandy deserts of Lower Egypt, they saw various phenomena of unusual refraction to which they gave the name of mirage. In the time of Demosthenes the division between military and political offices *was beginning* to be strongly marked. Hampden had a wonderful art of leading men into his principles and views, who all the time believed that they *were leading* him. Pyrrhus perished by a blow from a stone, as he *was besieging* Argos, a town in the Peloponnesus. While Servius Tullius *was reigning* at Rome, Pisistratus was tyrant at Athens. I *have been reading* Macaulay's essays. I *have been writing* all the morning. I expect I *shall be travelling* all over Europe this summer. I shall not go, for they *will be talking* politics all the evening. After the ancient philosophers *had been declaiming* eight hundred years, had they made the world better than when they began? All this time the Conqueror *had been struggling* to maintain what he had seized.

557. The active participle is frequently used with the verb *to be*, with a passive signification, when it quite clear that the subject is passive.

While the temple of the Lord *was building*. The nation had cried out loudly against the crime while it *was committing*. While the old castle of Landshort was in this state of perplexity, a very interesting scene *was transacting* in a different part of the Odenwald. The castle *has been building* these ten years.

558. The active participle *being* is now much employed with the passive participle of the verb to express the continuance of an action, when the subject is passive.

Mustachios *are being* cultivated expressly for Continental use. (Mayhew.) As long as a bank note is out, an interest *is being* received

for the capital which it represents. (Chambers.) One gentleman in a nightcap is shaving himself, another *is being* shaved by the fisherman. (Thackeray.) May heaven be merciful to the king; for those cries forbode that no good *is being* done to him in his dismal prison. (Dickens.) A vast fire *was being* piled up, into which Walter fully understood he was to be cast. (Percy B. St. John.) Wat Tyler was not at mile-end with the rest, but while that meeting *was being* held broke into the tower. (Dickens.) The guards ceased to stand very still; none of them ran away, or even shrunk back, but they looked as if the pack *were being* shuffled, every man seeming to change places. (Kinglake [Eothen].) It would be desirable that each of the parties should remember, that of the two systems, that in which the people *were* at any time *being* drilled was always at that time the unpopular system. (Macaulay.) I scarcely ever in all my life saw any phenomena so ridiculous as the meekness and gravity of those three young men, whilst *being led* to the altar. (Kinglake.) While tea and coffee *were being* served, names *were* constantly *being* announced, till the room was quite full. (Mrs. Stowe.)

Observation 1. This use of the active participle *being* with *to be* has been blamed by many grammarians, and one author goes so far as to call it a cockney expression for which no respectable authority can be given. The expression is in constant use in familiar language, and the names of the authors attached to the above examples are, we think, a sufficient authority for its use.

Observation 2. The use of the participle *being*, as exemplified in the above rule extends only to the present and imperfect tenses. In the other tenses either the active participle must be employed, according to rule 557, or the sentence must be otherwise formed.

559. The verbs *to behold, to discern, to descry, to observe, to perceive, to keep, to see, to watch, to feel, to have, to find, to hear, to remark,* when followed by an accusative, take the active participle after them to express the duration of an action.

Behold the wheel of fortune incessantly *turning* round. The hero *beheld* a dark-red stream of fire *rushing* down from the hill. We one day *descried* some shapeless object *drifting* at a distance. *See* that moth *fluttering* round the candle; man of pleasure, behold thy image! The Red King *seeing* the Normans thus *falling* from him, revenged himself upon them by appealing to the English. I *heard* their drowning cry *mingling* with the wind. I *heard* the waves *rushing* along the side of the ship, and *roaring* in my very ear. I delighted to *watch* the gentle undulating billows, *rolling* their silver volumes, as if to die on those happy shores. We *find* Buonaparte soliciting employment at Paris, in 1794. I *felt* something *creeping* up my leg. I hope you will not *keep* me *waiting* longer than you can help.

560. The active participle is used immediately after the following neuter verbs: *to appear, to come, to continue, to go on, to keep, to fly, to remain, to sit, to stand, to stop, to cease, to leave off, to want.*

At last we saw a light which *appeared* slowly *advancing* towards us. The hounds *came running* across the fields, and passed near to where we were standing. The music continued *playing* the whole of the time. These evils *went on increasing* every year. The swallows *kept flying* round and round in giddy circles. The frightened birds

flew screaming over our heads, and we *sat watching* them till they had all disappeared. I *stood watching* the golden-tipped heights of Mont Blanc, till the sun went down, and the full moon *came peering* exactly over the highest peak. This watch *wants repairing*. Do *leave off talking*.

561. All prepositions govern the active participle.

The Medici of Florence acquired more fame from their share *in promoting* the culture of letters and arts, than from their immense wealth. Geography is indispensable *to* your *comprehending* history. Microscopes are instruments *for viewing* small objects. Caesar saved himself at Alexandria *by throwing* himself into the sea, swimming with one hand, while he held up his commentaries in the other. He appeared to be intent *upon studying* those ancient inscriptions. Nothing is more difficult than to suffer *without complaining*. Before you give way to anger try to find a reason *for* not *being* angry. We make life uneasy *by thinking* of death, and death uneasy *by thinking* of life. A habit of sincerity in acknowledging faults is a guard *against committing* them. I shall cheerfully bear the reproach *of having* descended below the dignity of history, if I can succeed *in placing* before the English of the nineteenth century a true picture of the life of their ancestors.

562. The active participle is used with the preposition *of* after certain substantives which require the infinitive after them in German.

Next to the *crime of writing* contrary to what a man thinks is *that of writing* without thinking. Shall we through a *fear of dying* defer one single instant to assert our liberty. Julius Caesar published two books on the *art of speaking* and *writing* correctly. The *desire of conquering* is a kind of avarice which is never satiated. Wisdom is the *power of judging* rightly. The man of science will seldom stoop to the humbler *task of accomodating* himself to the capacity of a learner. The ancient *order of writing* was from right to left. Their inferior and wretched *mode of writing* readily accounts for the state of literature among the Chinese. The study which seems the most likely to induce a *habit of thinking* is that of the mathematics. Every man has a strong natural *desire of being* valued by others.

563. When there is a second subject, to which the action of the participle refers, that subject is expressed by a noun in the genitive case, or by a possessive pronoun.

Antonio read in this confusion a consciousness of fault, and of that *fault's being* discovered. The Pope, on king *Stephen's resisting* his ambition, laid England under an interdict. One would imagine these critics never no much as heard of *Homer's having* written first. Did you ever hear this Jew say any thing about Sophia *Mansfeld's returning* to Saxony? William the conqueror disarmed his English subjects, and forbade *their having* any light in their houses after 8 o'clock at night, when a bill was rung called curfew. Bread is called the staff of life from *its being* used in some manner or other by all nations. Take care to be an economist in prosperity, there is no *fear* of *your being* one in adversity. On condition of *her being* admitted into the queen's household. Was there no interval of time between *his receiving* the vase and *his putting* it into the furnace?

564. The second subject, alluded to in the foregoing rule is, however, frequently expressed by a noun without the sign of the genitive case.

In 1808 there was a revolution in Spain caused by *Buonaparte placing* his brother Joseph on the Spanish throne. The order of the Hospitallers originated in some pious *persons attending* the hospitals established at Jerusalem for pilgrims in the 11th century. An eclipse of the sun is occasioned by *the moon passing* between the earth and the sun. White is occasioned by a *body reflecting* all the seven primary colours. Whatever is done without ostentation and without the *people being* witnesses of it, is most praiseworthy. A man may be proud of a good action without any base *interest lurking* at the bottom of it.

565. The active participle is used to translate the German indem, nachdem, da, als, weil, and the relative pronoun.

Our earth is a moon to the moon, *waxing* and *waning* in the same manner, but *appearing* about thirteen times larger. Platina is the heaviest of metals *being* twenty three times heavier than water. Old family servants are like rats in a mansion, or mites in a cheese, *bespeaking* the antiquity and fatness of their abode. On September 3, 1666, a terrible fire broke out in London, which *continuing* 3 days, destroyed 600 streets, 89 churches and 13,202 dwelling houses. Jerusalem *belonging* to the Turks, and the Turks *hating* Christianity, these Christian travellers were often insulted and ill used. Hannibal led his troops across the Ebro, men *having been* sent forward to survey the passes of the Alps. It seemed that Miltiades, *having* long *been* engaged in commands and magistracies, could not be a private man. *Daring* no longer openly to attack, he attempted secretly to wound the fame of his sovereign. Time is a blunderer, *placing, replacing, ordering, disordering, impressing, erasing, approaching, removing, making* all things good and bad, and almost always not to be known again. The enlightened side of the planet Mercury, *being* always towards the sun, and *his* never *appearing* round, are evident proofs that he does not shine by his own light. It is the opinion of philosophers that each of the fixed stars is a sun *having* worlds *revolving* round it. He visited Paris, *frequenting* its noble libraries and admirable institutions. The atmosphere in which we live is a transparent mass of air *possessing* the property of refracting light. God, the uncreated, the incomprehensible, attracted few worshippers: It was before Deity embodied in a human form, *walking* among men, *partaking* of their infirmities, *leaning* on their bosoms, *weeping* over their graves, *slumbering* in the manger, *bleeding* on the cross that the prejudices of the Synagogue and the doubts of the Academy and the pride of the portico were humbled in the dust.

566. Some transitive verbs, which admit of a second verb as object, require this verb to be in the participle. The principal are *to avoid, to decline, to defer, to delay, to deny, to detest, to dread, to entreat, to fear, to finish, to forbear, to have done, to hate, to help, to enjoy, to mention, to miss, to purpose, to prefer, to put off, to recollect, to regret, to renounce, to resist, to want, to be worth.*

A wise man will *avoid showing* any excellence in trifles. Do not *defer doing* a good action till is too late. I entreat *being informed*

of the name of my benefactor. You need not *fear overcharging* the complaisance which you show to those whose favour you wish to gain. When this singular priest had *finished speaking*, he rode at a furious gallop to the temple, and flung his lance against it as an insult. Zenobia *preferred dying* with the title of queen to accepting the advantageous offer which Aurelian made her. I don't *recollect seeing* anybody come in. How many people *regret* not *having been* diligent in their youth. Would you *renounce being* useful to the present generation, because envy endeavours to detract from your fame? There is scarce any book *worth reading* once that is not worthy of a second perusal. I cannot *resist availing* myself of the permission.

567. Other active verbs take the participle after them only occasionally, for example, to avoid the repetition of an infinitive.

He seemed to *intend appearing* in a new character. It is needless to *attempt describing* the particular characters of young people.

Passive Participle.

568. The passive participle is frequently used as an adjective, before the noun.

They bring before us the *haunted forests*, the *enchanted gardens*, the achievements of *enamoured knights*, and the smiles of *rescued princesses*. Cato the Censor mentions this *lost literature* in his *lost work* on the antiquities of his country. The Normans attributed gluttony and drunkenness to the *vanquished Saxons*, as vices peculiar to their inferior station. The earth is our *destined habitation*. He is a poor *decayed gentleman*. The Red King was shot dead by an arrow from an *unseen hand*. An *affected simplicity* is a *refined imposture*. The *untaught Saxons*.

569. The passive participle is put immediately after the noun, where in German either a relative pronoun, or a participle used adjectively, is employed.

Slander is like an *arrow shot* in the dark. The moon is an opaque body, and shines entirely by *light received* from the sun. A *person dressed* in white can be seen farther in a dark night than *one dressed* in black. Convex mirrors diminish *objects seen* in them. The smallest *men known* inhabit the mountains in the interior of the island of Madagascar. Ennius sang the second Punic War in *numbers borrowed* from the Iliad. William surrounded himself with Norman *lords enriched* by the property of English nobles. Every Crusader wore a *cross marked* on his right shoulder. In reading Virgil we are less interested in the *action described*, than in reading Homer. In proportion to the *diligence employed* to obtain it, is the worth of the *object taught*. Eustace de Saint Pierre rose up and said, that if the six *men required* were not sacrificed, the whole population would be. A worthy *man advanced*, a modest *man encouraged*, the *indigent relieved*, all these the good-natured man looks upon as blessings to himself. We praise *things heard* will more pleasure than *things seen*. The next *witness called* was the master of the porcelain manufactory at Berlin. Her very ruins told the history of *times gone by*.

570. The passive participle of some few verbs can be used as a noun.

The *conquered* often buy peace for an immense sum of money. That the governors may be solicitous only for the interests of the *governed*, it is necessary that the interests of the governors and the *governed* should be the same. They were occupied in burying the *slain*.

571. The passive participle sometimes expresses the meaning of indem, da, als, weil, in which cases the active participle *being* is omitted.

His money *gone*, he began to work anew. His desire for travelling *satisfied*, he longed to return home. *Banished* from Germany, he sought refuge in England. *Favoured* by free institutions the colony flourished.

572. The passive participle must always be used in the formation of the perfect and pluperfect tenses, even with those verbs which in German form their perfect with the infinitive.

How the people *could have believed* that king Richard was alive, it is difficult to imagine. I *could have wept* for very vexation. If the sea had been rough, the vessel *must have perished*. Louis *might have escaped* if he *would have deserted* his subjects. You *should* not *have obeyed* the first impulses of passion. She *ought* to *have been* more prudent in her choice. He *might have killed* himself. The weight of England among European nations, ought, from this epoch, to have greatly increased. It is scarcely necessary to say that such speeches as those in Thucydides *could* never *have been* delivered.

573. Some of the verbs which take an accusative with the infinitive after them can, when the sense admits of it, take a passive participle after the accusative. The principal of them are *get, have, hear, find, imagine, make, see, think, want, wish.*

It has been either my good or evil lot to *have* my roving passion *gratified*. Tell your general, said King Edward, that I require to *have* six of the most distinguished citizes *sent* here, bare-legged, and in their shirts, with ropes about their necks. It vexes me, said the clown, to *hear* Aristides every where *called* the „Just". Imitate the virtues which you have *heard praised*. I *made* myself *understood*. It was perhaps the very laxity of his (Sophocles') principles which *made* him *thought* so agreeable a fellow. In Athens, where audiences were numerous and readers few, every poet would necessarily desire to *see* his poetry *put* into action. We have *seen*, in our own time, great talents *employed* with dubious success in this struggle against the spirit of the age. Did he say that he *wanted* me *gone?*

Moods and Tenses.

The Infinitive.

574. The infinitive mood can be subject in a sentence.

To die, or *to live*, requires little courage; *to die*, or *live* becomingly requires much fortitude. *To be angry* is to revenge the fault of others

upon ourselves. Nobly *to live* or nobly *to die* is the sole choice of a brave man. *To act* is easy, but *to think* is difficult. *To have learnt* Latin in my youth, instead of now, would have been better. *Not to have read* some books is rather a merit than otherwise.

575. Many verbs in English require an accusative case and the infinitive after them, in cases where, in German two clauses of a sentence are connected by the conjunction daß. These verbs are:

1. Those which are *always* followed by an accusative and infinitive, and do not admit of the conjunction *that* after them; namely, *to advice, to allow, to cause, to get, to order, to permit, to suffer, to take* (dafür halten), *to want, to wish.*

   I *advise you to try* a warmer climate. He laid England under an interdict, which means that he *allowed* no *service to be* performed in the churches, no *couples to be* married, no *bells to be* rung, no dead *bodies to be* buried. The superior address of Marlborough *caused* the *force* of Sweden *to be* directed against Russia. Caesar *caused Cleopatra to be* proclaimed queen of Egypt. Hannibal *ordered* the *lad to go* round to all the doors to see whether he was blockaded in the same way on all sides. The honest man seldom *permits himself to jest,* because he knows that the most innocent jests may sometimes injure the reputation. The trophies of Miltiades, said Themistocles, will not *suffer me to sleep.* I *took him to be* much younger. Nobody *wants you to be* positive, my good friend. Augustus had clear and brilliant eyes, in which he *wished it to be* thought that there was a certain divine vigour.

2. Those which may take the conjunction *that* after them, but which are very frequently employed with the accusative and the infinitive. The principal of them are *to affirm, to appoint, to apprehend, to beg, to believe, to conceive, to conclude, to confess, to demonstrate, to deny, to describe, to determine, to desire, to discover, to expect, to find, to forbid, to imagine, to know, to observe, to presume, to proclaim, to pronounce, to prove, to recognise, to remember, to require, to shew, to suppose, to suspect, to think, to understand.*

   I *begged her to favour* me with one of Haydn's sonatas. A haughty man *conceives* all his *opinions to be* infallible. He *denies* any *man to be* wise unless the good man. We *desire things to be* true therefore we believe them. Homer's expression is like the colouring of some great masters, which *discovers itself to be* laid on boldly and executed with rapidity. The Portian law *forbade* the *rod to be* applied to the body of any Roman citizen. I imagined him to have been attached to me by every tie of kindness and duty. The consuls performed the levy more severely and exactly than any one *remembered it to have been* performed in former years. Fame *reported Numa Pompilius to be* distinguished for virtue and wisdom. Hereward was so good a soldier that the Normans *supposed him to be* aided by enchantment. Without the microscope should we have *supposed the dust* on the wings of a butterfly *to be* minute feathers.

3. Those which take the infinitive without the preposition *to.* They are *to behold, to bid, to discern, to feel, to have,*

to hear, to know, to let, to make, to observe, to perceive, to praise, to remark, to see, to watch. Know has often *to.*

He *bade me go* away. I would *have you set out* to-morrow if possible. We *heard* the *thunder roll* over our heads. I have *known him fish* all day long without success. If a man's wits are wandering *let him study* the mathematics. Out of all these dialects Homer derived that harmony which *makes* us *confess* he had not only the richest head, but the finest ear in the world. I *observed him steal* away like a guilty thing. No one has been heard to swear that he *saw* Count *Laniska write* the word tyrant upon the vase.

Observation. Such of these verbs as are capable of the passive form, take the preposition *to* in the passive.

He has been heard *to* swear. He was observed *to* steal away. The thunder was heard *to* roll. We were made *to* confess. He was seen *to* write.

576. The infinitive is used after the present and imperfect of *to be*, to express the German ſollen, müſſen &c. (See rules 468 and 469.)

577. When the active infinitive is used after the verb ſein in German, the passive infinitive must be used in English.

Ambition is one of those passions that *is* never *to be satisfied.* It *is to be regretted* that the prose writings of Milton should, in our time, be so little read. Milton's public conduct was such as *was to be expected* from a man of a spirit so high, and an intellect so powerful. Apply the microscope to any of God's works, nothing *is to be found* but beauty and perfection. I cannot go where the goodness of God *is* not *to be seen.* The gladiators who are the most *to be pitied* were undoubtedly the Christian captives. Milton was acquainted with very language of modern Europe, from which either pleasure or profit *were to be derived.* The men of our time *are* not *to be perverted* or converted by quartos. Knowledge is *to be gained* only by study. True taste *is* as rare *to be found* as a true genius. The life of Cato *was* rather admirable than amiable, fit *to be praised* rather than imitated.

Observation. After some adjectives which follow to verb *to be* the active infinitive is sometimes employed.

He is *difficult to please.* People who are over *difficult* to please often choose the worst at last. Death is *worse to fear* than to suffer.

578. The infinitive is used after *such — as, so — as, how* and *too,* when the subject remains unchanged.

That property of the magnet, by which it communicates *such* virtue to a needle *as to point* towards the poles of the earth, was discovered about the beginning of the fourteenth century. His conduct has been *such as to render* a reconciliation difficult. Miltiades was affable and courteous, and none were *so* mean *as to be* excluded from his presence. It is taste that selects the expressions, that combines, arranges and varies them *so as to produce* the greatest effect. Till men have been for some time free they do not know *how to use* freedom. Francis I. consulting with his generals *how to lead* his army into Italy, Amarel, his fool, advised him to consult rather *how to bring* it back. There is no other study in the court of princes but *how to please.* Few kings know *how to seek* real glory. If we knew *how to limit* our wishes we should be happier. As a satirist Seume was *too* bitter to

be amusing. In Rome the oligarchy was *too* powerful *to be* subverted by force. Life is *too* short and time *too* precious *to read* every new book quite over, in order to find that it is not worth reading. Nobody can look on the features of Dante and doubt that they belonged to a man *too* proud and *too* sensitive *to be* happy.

Observation. In such sentences the verb *to know* must always have *how* after it.

I *know how* to manage a farm. He does not *know how* to manage a school.

579. The infinitive is used after some other words, such as *when, where, who, which, what,* and is translated by ſollen.

I don't know *where to go* or *what to do.* I cannot tell *what to make* of it. It is a great secret in writing to know *when to be* plain and when poetical and figurative. He was at a loss *which* road *to take.* The Son of Man hath not *where to lay* his head.

Observation. If the subject changes in sentences similar to those in the two last rules, the form is the same as in German; except with *too,* for examples of which see the following rule.

His *conduct* has been such *that I* cannot hope for a reconciliation. *Taste* selects, combines and arranges the expression so *that they* may produce the greatest effect. *I* do not know *how he* is to proceed in the business.

580. The infinitive is frequently used after the accusative which follows the preposition *for;* in German such forms are translated by damit, daß, als daß, or sometimes by a dative case.

He is a fool who starves himself to amass a fortune *for other people to enjoy.* Here is a poem *for you to learn* by heart. The king's brother rose against him in France, and rendered it necessary *for him to repair* to that country. It is enough *for* a skilful *man to have neglected* nothing in order to succeed. It is better *for a man to lose* his life than to lose his honour by an unworthy action. This affair made it very difficult *for Caesar with determine* what plans to adopt. English artists confess that the aspect of nature is *too* sublime and majestic *for* the *pencil* of art faithfully *to reach.* Your friendship is *too* necessary to your young relation *for me to wish* to deprive her of it.

581. The infinitive is often used instead of the German relative pronoun with ſollen or können. If there is a preposition it may be placed at the end of the sentence.

He possessed a perseverance and assiduity, not *to be overcome* by the greatest difficulties. I have no friend *to help* me in the hour of need. Some people laugh when there is nothing *to laugh at.* The fairest flower is the first *to fade.* He is not the man *to defend* such principles. Here is a little box *to put* your pens in. An amiable man has the whole world *to be* happy in.

582. The simple infinitive in English is generally sufficient to express the German adverb um before an infinitive.

Thousands departed for Jerusalem *to make* war against the Turks. There were brooks, where the deer went down *to drink.* The Black

Prince was called by that name from the colour of the armour he wore *to set off* his fair complexion. Charles quitted London, never to return till the day of a terrible reckoning had arrived. Small causes are sufficient to make a man uneasy when great ones are not in the way. Dastardly men are like sorry horses; they have but just spirit and mettle enough to be mischievous. Edgar was not important enough *to be* severe with.

583. The infinitive is not employed after *think* and *believe*, as after the corresponding verbs in German.

I thought I saw him in the crowd. *I believe I hear* him.

584. The infinitive without *to* is used in interrogative exclamations. (See rule 466.)

Indicative.

585. The Present Tense is sometimes used instead of the future.

To-morrow *I start* for London. The more you *study*, the better it will be for you. The steamer *sails* next Monday.

Observation. It is however not so frequently used as in German to express the certainty of a future event.

586. The Present Tense is sometimes used instead of the imperfect to give force and animation to the discourse.

Bonaparte crosses the Alps, and marches against the Austrians. Caesar leaves Gaul, crosses the Rubicon, and enters Italy at the head of five thousand men.

587. The German Imperfect Tense must always be translated by the English imperfect, but the imperfect must also be frequently used in English where the perfect is employed in German. The perfect can never be employed in English when the action has taken place at any stated past period of time, or within a given period of time which is completely passed, such as, *yesterday, last week, last Monday, two years ago &c.* In this case the imperfect only can be employed.

Homer *lived* about 900 years before the Christian era. Cicero *wrote* poems. I *wrote* to him yesterday. I *saw* him at 2 o'clock. Many valuable discoveries were *made* last century. Gilia Flavio *discovered* the compass about 600 years ago. Columbus *discovered* America in the fifteenth century. *Were* you at the theatre last night? Has he brought the books? Yes, he *brought* them yesterday evening. Virgil *was* born at Mantua. The errors of Descartes *proved* very useful to Newton.

588. The Perfect Tense expresses a past action without reference to any stated past time, or an action which has taken place within a given period of time which is

not yet passed; such as, *to-day, this week, this month, this year &c.*

He *has sold* his country for gold. They have offended against the laws of their country, and must pay the penalty. The tallest oaks *have been* acorns, and the greatest giants *have been* infants. God *has created* heaven and earth. Cicero *has written* some magnificent orations. *Have you been* in England? There have been two revolutions within twenty years in France. Great discoveries *have been made* in this century. *I have* not *seen* him to-day, but I saw him yesterday. He *has been* absent all the day. *Have* you *seen* her to-day? No, but I saw her yesterday.

589. The Perfect Tense is used instead of the German present tense when the action has already lasted a certain time, but is not yet finished. In this case also the English pluperfect will correspond to the German imperfect.

Tin *has been known* from the earliest ages, and was much employed by the Egyptians in the arts. I *have been* fifteen years in Germay and shall probably pass the rest of my days here. How long *have* you *been waiting* for me? More than an hour. His wife *has been dead* these ten years. I had been waiting an hour when I saw you.

The Imperative.

590. The pronouns are only added in solemn language.

Enjoy the world, but do not give your whole time to it. *Bring* me some water.

591. *Do* is used with the adverb *not.*

Do not envy the good. *Do not* be the slave of passion. *Do not* lose any opportunity of practising virtue.

592. *Do* is used to give greater emphasis to the imperative.

Do grant me this favour. *Do,* Comtois, do make haste.

593. *Let* is used in the first and third persons.

Let every one exercise himself in the art which he understands. *Let* dark Cuthullin yield to me the ancient throne of Cormac.

Subjunctive.

594. The present tense of the Subjunctive is used only to imply the uncertainty of a future action.

The works of Milton cannot be comprehended or enjoyed unless the mind of the reader *cooperate* with that of the writer. A liar hath need of a good memory, lest he *contradict* at one time what he said at another. Take care that not a single minute *be* left unemployed. Except thou desirest to hasten thine end, take care that thou never *add* any artificial heat to thy body by wine or spice. If the world

be better a century hence, it must be attributed to the spread of civilization and religion. Unless he *exert* himself, he will not succeed. Whether he *succeed* or not, his intention is laudable. Take heed that no man *deceive* you. I will respect him though he *chide* me. Love not sleep *lest* thou *come* to poverty. If he *do* but touch the hills, they shall smoke. If he *succeed* and *obtain* his end, he will not be the happier for it.

595. As the present of the subjunctive always refers to a future time so the imperfect of *to be*, always refers to the present time.

If I *were* emperor, not the meanest of my subjects should be oppressed with impunity. A poor man who is grateful would be generous if he *were* rich. *Were* a planet to fly from its orbit, it would represent a vicious man. O Conqueror, of whom so many great names are proud now, *it were* better to have conquered one true heart than England. It *were* better for a man to be subject to any vice, than to drunkenness. *Were* Fingal himself before me, my son should not darken with fear. Generosity suffers from the pain of others, as if it *were* answerable for them.

Observation. *To be* is the only verb in English which has an imperfect of the subjunctive. Like the imperfect of the subjunctive in German, with the conjunction *if* it supposes the existence of a state of things which really does not exist. For example if I say in English: if she *were* rich, I mean to express distinctly that she is *not* rich, again if I say: if she *were not* rich, I clearly state that she *is* rich.

596. The imperfect of the subjunctive would appear sometimes to refer to the past, but on examination it will be found that the action was present at the time of some other past action in the sentence.

In the coach with the Duke of Monmouth *was* an officer whose orders were to stab be prisoner if a rescue *were* attempted. Little *was* to be dreaded from a second Protector unless he *were* also a second Cromwell.

Adverbs.

597. *Adverbs of place* are usually put after the verb, and frequently at the end of the sentence.

Then let the magistrates, who have made the law of no effect, thank themselves if their wives and daughters go *astray*. The scaffold stood nearly beneath the caves of Boston church and appeared to be a fixture *there*. There was wild scenery all around her, and a home and comfort *nowhere*. I found in Cairo a mixture of all nations; some brought *thither* by the love of knowledge, some by the love of gain. The fabled apples on the brink of the lake Asphaltes were said to be fair *without* and, *within*, ashes. The towering flames were seen *far* and *wide* through the adjacent country. My duty called me *thence*. Vice is in fashion *everywhere*. He is gone *abroad*. The vessel ran *aground*. Seek not for happiness *here below*, if thou art worthy of it, it will find thee *out*. We sailed *eastwards*. Walk *in*, or wait *outside*. The life that is devoted to knowledge passes silently

away, and is very little diversified with events. Thucydides, though at a wide interval, comes *next* to Tacitus. Ungrateful Florence! Dante sleeps *afar*.

598. *Indefinite Adverbs of time* are generally placed between the subject and the verb.

The Romans *continually* triumphed over the most warlike nations. Herrings *often* frequent a particular part of the coast, and *afterwards suddenly* abandon it. It is very true that women *generally* bear pain and illness better than men. At Sparta the laws *constantly* interfered with the tastes of the people, at Athens they did not. The happiness of the many *commonly* depends on causes independent of victories or defeats, of revolutions or restorations. Then the king went to review his guards, not as kings *ordinarily* review their guards, but with the minute attention and severity of an old drill-sergeant. Unhappiness *always* accompanies vice. I *often* walked in the Rialto, as on classic ground. I *rarely* get up before seven in the winter.

599. *Definite Adverbs of time* are placed after the verb, and usually at the end of the sentence.

He came *one day* to amuse himself, and found the master busy in building a sailing chariot. I forgot, *after a time*, my disappointment. The Edinburgh Review is published *quarterly*, the Illustrated London News *weekly*, and the Times *daily*. Do not put off till *to-morrow* what you ought to do *to-day*. The proudest royal houses are but of *yesterday*, when compared with the line of the Supreme Pontiffs. At the death of Queen Mary the bells of all the steeples of Holland tolled dolefully *day after day*.

600. *Adverbs of manner* generally follow a neuter verb, and the object of an active verb.

In this way the good alchymist lived on *quietly* and *comfortably*, to what is called a good old age. It appears easier to pronounce *decidedly* upon the great characters of antiquity, because we have less means of detecting error. Tradition has preserved some wild strophes of the barbarous hymn which she chanted *wildly* amid that scene of fire and slaughter. You should persevere *steadily*, if you wish to attain your end. She was one of those fortune tellers who live *comfortably* on the credulity of others. She sings *well*. He walks *fast*. I always wait *patiently*.

Mohammed, hearing that there was a disposition in Medina to receive him *favourably*, appointed Friday, the Moslem sabbath, for his entrance. When the eye sees objects *distinctly* at a great distance, it is unable without some change to see objects *distinctly* at any less distance. The shades in the Athenian character strike the eye *more rapidly* than those in the Lacedaemonian; not because they are darker, but because they are on a brighter ground. Milton it is well known, admired Euripides *highly*, much more highly than, in our opinion, he deserved. You should seek knowledge *steadly*, *patiently* and *perseveringly* Perform your duty *faithfully*, for this will procure you the blessing of heaven. He speaks English *well*. He grasped my hand *convulsively*. I love him *tenderly*. Tacitus tells a fine story *finely*, but he cannot tell a plain story *plainly*.

Observation. There are many exceptions to this rule, for a great number of adverbs of manner can be placed before the verb. Some exceptions are explained by rule 601. In many cases, however, practice alone

can decide. We can say with equal propriety, „He *calmly* and *steadily* excused himself"; (Maculay.) or „He excused himself *calmly* and *steadily*"; but the adverb must never be placed between the verb and the object. We can never say, „He speaks *well* English", nor, „He *well* speaks English", but always, „He speaks English *well*."

601. *Adverbs of manner* are placed before the verb, when it is followed by an object, which, from its length, would otherwise too widely separate the adverb from the verb.

At Maximilian's death, Charles *openly* aspired to that dignity which his grandfather had attempted, without success, to secure for him. Leo *secretly* exhorted the German princes to place one of their own number on the imperial throne. After a long cold winter we *joyfully* welcome the approach of summer. Elizabeth *clearly* discerned the advantages which were to be derived from a close connection between the monarchy and the priesthood. Horace *very happily* compares those who, in his time, imitated Pindar, to the youth who attempted to fly to heaven on waxen wings. We *willingly* acknowledge the obligations which are due to Mr. Mitford's talent and industry.

602. *Adverbs of degree* usually precede the verb.

The eye *infinitely* surpasses all the works of man's industry. On the 18th of June 1815, the allies *signally* and *completely* defeated Napoleon at Waterloo. The Dutch *greatly* excel in the art of curing herrings. Mr. Manly *equally* disliked low company, understanding by it persons of mean habits and vulgar conversation. The outline of the ring round the moon sometimes *faintly* shows the colours of the rainbow. Modern historians *far* excel their predecessors in the art of deducing general principles from facts. He *utterly* forgot the dictates of humanity. They *wholly* avoid the path of virtue, because it sometimes appears rugged and uneven. I *little* thought that he would keep his promise. I *hardly* know what to think of the proposal.

603. *Adverbs of affirmation, negation* and *doubt* are, for the most part, found before the verb.

I *by no means* approve of his design. You *certainly* did what you could, and therefore deserved success. Guttenberg *assuredly* first made use of moveable types, if he was not the inventor of printing. You *perhaps* think him wrong. I *really* think, he did not do it. I *neither* saw him, *nor* heard of him.

604. *Adverbs of order* and *number* have the same situation as the corresponding adverbs in German.

I saw him *first* at Venice and *afterwards* at Rome.

605. *Adverbs of interrogation* are put at the beginning of the sentence, as in German.

O Romeo, Romeo, *wherefore* art thou Romeo? O death, *where* is thy sting? O grave, *where* is thy victory? *Whither* shall I fly? *How* often can you come?

606. All adverbs are placed after the auxiliary verb.

There *was never* yet a truly great man that *was not* at the same time truly virtuous. Shakspeare dramatised stories which *had previously* appeared in print. If there be any form of government which, in all ages and nations, *has always* been and *must always* be pernicious,

it *is certainly* pure oligarchy. Frederic, who *had just* completed his twenty eighth year, became king of Prussia. Timid virtue *is often* oppressed. No man *was ever* great by imitation. Many people lose a great deal of time by reading novels, where characters, that never existed, *are insipidly* displayed, and sentiments, that *were never* felt, *are pompously* described. Persons whose writings were displeasing to the court *were cruelly* mutilated, and nonconformity *was severely* punished. The surface of the moon *is greatly* diversified with inequalities, which have the appearance of hills and valleys. A nation without literature *may certainly* be called barbarous and savage, and without a free press, a slave. Till the revolution of 1688 the liberty of the press *was very imperfectly* enjoyed in England. The earth *is happily* adapted to the nature of man. Men *have naturally* more courage than women. The courage of woman *is chiefly* tried in domestic dangers. Juno was the wife of Jupiter, and *was of course* the queen of heaven. In 1620 the art of weaving silk *was first* introduced into England. Many pieces of villainy *are sometimes so craftily* accomplished that the law can take no hold of the actors. The character of Milton *was peculiarly* distinguished by loftiness of thought, that of Dante by intensity of feeling. I *must needs* go. Socrates *was really* a great man.

607. When there is more than one auxiliary verb the adverb, when it qualifies the verb, is placed after the second auxiliary.

His crime was great, and he *has been severely* punished. In no country *have* literature and science *been more extensively* cultivated than in Germany. Your time *would be well* employed in the study of chemistry.

608. Adverbs are placed before adjectives and participles.

Tacitus undertook to make us *intimately acquainted* with a man *singularly dark* and inscrutable. The heroes of Livy are the most insipid of all beings, real or imaginary, the heroes of Plutarch *always excepted.* A system of etiquette as *pompously frivolous* as that of the Escurial had been established. Hume, without *positively asserting* much more than he can prove, gives prominence to all the circumstances which support his case. The English ministry seemed *resolutely bent* upon reducing the colonies to the most slavish obedience to their decrees. Inez was *ineffectually struggling* to release herself from the hands of the familiars, when suddenly she saw Don Ambrosio before her. A man used to vicissitudes cannot be *easily dejected.* Gas is a term applied by chemists to all *permanently elastic* fluids. Books *quite worthless* are *quite harmless.*

609. Adverbs take various positions in a sentence, according to the emphasis, or what they more particularly qualify.

Unfortunately he thinks too much of himself. He will be rewarded, *not* with wealth, but with a good conscience. *Never* can virtue sanction vice. How *strangely* are the opinions of men altered by time. England *only* has possessions in South Africa. Italy has every gift of God, *only* not freedom. The dramatist creates, the historian *only* disposes. The Greeks admired *only* themselves, the Romans *only* themselves and the Greeks. Tacitus *certainly* had neither equal nor second among the ancient historians. The compass does not always point *directly* north. *Surely* vain are all men by nature who are ignorant of God. *Often,* said Mahomet, the angel appears to me in a

human form, and *sometimes* I hear sounds like the tinkling of a bell. Consider how much more you have than you *really* want, and how much more unhappy you might be than you *really* are. His mind had been imbued with those classical ideas and associations which afford *so* many sources of pleasure. The citizens of the republics round the Egean sea formed *perhaps* the finest militia that ever existed. The Spartans continued to form a national force, *long after* their neighbours had begun to hire soldiers. Virtue *alone* is happiness below.

610. Adverbs which are joined to a verb, to give it a particular signification, are generally placed immediately after the verb, but may be put after the object.

Take off your coat, or *take* your coat *off*. The cavalier received a dark lantern from his companion and *threw off* his cloak. And behold, one of them which were with Jesus *stretched out* his hand, and drew his sword, and struck a servant of the High Priest's and *smote off* his ear. They bow themselves, they *bring forth* their young ones, they *cast out* their sorrows. *Bring out* the prisoner. I have not *kept up* any acquaintance with him.

Observation. If the object consists of a personal or demonstrative pronoun, the adverb is placed after it.

Charles returned to govern a nation which ought never to have *cast* him *out*, or never to have *received* him *back*. But thou, O Lord, be merciful unto me, and *raise* me *up*. God hath delivered me to the ungodly, and *turned* me *over* into the hands of the wicked. I *set* him *down* therefore, for a whig. I hope he will not *put* that *off*. *Fight* it *out* like Englishmen, or *talk* it *over* like friends.

Some peculiarities of the adverbs *enough; ago, hence; not; well, ill; very, much; no more, no longer; here, there, where, hither, thither, whither; hence, thence, whence; too, also*; *so*.

611. *Enough*, contrary to the usual rule, is placed after the adjective, and after the substantive which the adjective qualifies.

Youth and beauty are attractive *enough* in themselves. Nature has attractions *enough* round her. She is good-looking girl *enough*.

612. *Ago* and *hence*, corresponding to the German prepositions vor and nach, are put after the words which denote the length of time.

Mecca and Medina were taken *some time ago* by the Wahabees, a sect yearly increasing. I have not a tear left for an event which, *five years ago* would have bowed down my head to the earth. Chamouni we saw *a month ago*. *Ten years hence* there will not be one stone remaining on another. As for these my brothers of Genoa, I shall, in a *few days hence*, come and let them out of prison myself.

613. *Not*, when unaccompanied by a verb, is placed before substantives, pronouns and adverbs.

Who is going to the theatre this evening? *Not* I. It was *not* my brother. Do you go every day? No, *not* every day. The Greeks had *not* yet acquired superiority in war, in science, and the arts.

614. *Well* and *ill*, though adverbs, have in some cases the quality of adjectives.

It was *well* for Milton that he had here no Euripides to mislead him. Would it were bed time, Hal, and all were *well*. I am *well*, but my sister is *ill*. All is *well* that ends well. She obeyed my commands with an *ill* grace. I have had *ill* luck. *Ill* company is like a dog which dirts those most whom he loves best.

615. *Very* is used before adjectives, adverbs and participles. *Much* is used before verbs.

I am indeed *very* wretched. This stanza is *very* grand. They live *very* happily. The vizier was a short man, possessing a *very* pleasing face. After having seen the fortifications of Gibraltar and Malta, those of Ehrenbreitstein did not *much* strike me. Mary Queen of Scots was *very* unfortunate and, though *very* often imprudent, is *much* to be pitied. In my opinion English novels *much* excel those of France or Germany. He who sits *much* in a dark room becomes pale.

Observation. Very is also used adjectively. The Palatine is one mass of ruins, the *very* soil is formed of crumbling brickwork. The very name of Sobieski caused a panic among the Turks.

616. *No longer* and *no more* are both used to translate the German nicht mehr, but *no longer* is used only to express duration of time, for which purpose also *no more* can be sometimes used.

Alchymy is *no longer* studied by philosophers. He *no longer* thirsted after the discovery of the grand elixer. Inez *no longer* walked in the garden, but remained almost entirely in her apartment. The statute book *no more* forbids the taking of presents from allies in Europe now than it forbade the taking of presents in Asia then. The poet's creed on such subjects will *no more* influence his poetry, than the circulation of the blood will affect the blushes of a painter's Aurora. 'Tis Greece, but living Greece *no more!*

617. *Here, there* and *where* are now always used in the language of conversation instead of *hither, thither* and *whither*, which are confined to poetry and solemn discourse.

Come here! *Where* are you going? Do not go *there*. The elder Scipio Africanus had a tomb, if he was not buried at Liternum, *whither* he had retired to voluntary banishment. *Whither* shall I go from thy spirit? or *whither* shall I flee from the presence?

Come *hither, hither,* my little page?
Why dost thou weep and wail?

618. *Where* can never be used with reference to time, as is the case with the German wo.

At the time *when* the Maid of Saragoza first attracted attention, by working a battery where her lover had fallen, she was extremely pretty. It was precisely at the time *at which* the Roman people rose to unrivalled political ascendency that they stooped to pass under the intellectual yoke. The garden was his favourite resort at those hours *when* he wished to give full scope to his imagination. He looked forward to the time *when* he should be able to go about the earth relieving the indigent and comforting the distressed.

619. *Where* with a preposition is often used absolutely with reference to place.

He saw a group of men under the trees not far *from where* he had been standing.

Turn gentle hermit of the dale,
And guide my lonely way,
To where you taper cheers the vale
With hospitable ray.

620. *Hence, thence* and *whence* are used both with and without prepositions.

He goes *hence* to London. Then said Jesus unto him, get thee *hence,* Satan. When ye depart *thence,* shake off the dust under your feet, as a testimony against them. The Austrians in one part of the engagement, got to the brow of the hill, *whence* they had their first view of the Rhine. And going on *from thence,* he saw two other brethren. And many hearing him were astonished, saying, *from whence* hath this man these things? Here Macchiavelli's earth returned *to whence* it rose. The cave of Mount Pentelicus *from whence* the marble was dug that constructed the public edifices of Athens.

Observation. Hence and thence, when they mean *therefore, for that cause,* never take a preposition; as, He defeated a horde of savages, and *thence* looked upon himself as a conqueror. He could not bear to confess himself in error, *hence* he often had recourse to sophistry.

621. *Too* is placed after the word to which it belongs, *also* both before and after.

The bases of the columns, *too,* are richly sculptured. I love Scott, *too,* for his manliness of character. A blush *too* would crimson the cheek of Inez, but still she passed on. I *also* visited the Medici chapel. The garden was the resort *also* of Inez. The evening was fine *too.* The evening was *also* fine. She plays the piano and the harp *also.*

622. *So* is used instead of *also,* the auxiliary verb in the preceding part of the sentence being repeated.

Francisca is young, and lovely, *so* is her sister. The whole house had a dreary aspect, *so* had the garden. I visited the picture galleries at Florence, *so* did my companion. When she sat at table, her eye would dwell on mine, *so* would that of her mother.

Observation. For *so,* when used instead of the German pronoun es, see rule 362.

623. The adverb *then* is occasionally used adjectively.

The note alludes to the *then* recent publication of Walter Scott's Vision of Don Roderick. He applied to the *then* Secretary of state.

Prepositions.

624. All prepositions govern the accusative case.

His heart relented *towards her.* Come *with me.* He does not know *through whom* he obtained the situation. They were taught *by him.*

With thee, my bark, I'll swiftly go *athwart the foaming tide. Between you* and *me,* I don't think he will stay here long. *Whom* are you looking *at?* At *whom* are you looking?

625. All prepositions require the active participle after them. (See rule 561.)

626. Prepositions have the same position in a sentence as in German; but they can in certain cases be placed at the end of the sentence:

1. With the relative pronouns. (See rules 403 and 413.)
2. With neuter verbs which take a preposition, when they are in the passive. (See rule 538.)
3. When the object is placed at the beginning of the sentence for the sake of emphasis.

This I strongly objected *to. What* place are you going *to?*

Simple Prepositions.

About.

627. 1. *About* markes the locality of objects surrounding another.

The country *about Bonn* is very beautiful. Were the sun and the planets that move *about him* extinguished, they would not be missed, so small a space do they occupy in comparison with the whole world. I advise you to be lenient to the errors of those *about you.* Shall we walk *about town* till the evening? Look *about you,* and I think you will find it. A prince sees no face *about him* without a mask. True humour generally looks serious, whilst every body laughs *about him;* false humour is always laughing, whilst every body *about him* looks serious.

2. It denotes proximity to any given time, number, or quantity.

Gildas, a historian, the first known writer among the Anglo Saxons, flourished *about the year* 560. *About the tenth century* the English used to send their children to be educated in France. London contains *about two millions and a quarter* of inhabitants. The Rhine is *about 190 German miles* in length. I once caught a carp which weighed *about seven pounds.*

3. It has the same meaning as *concerning.*

Shakspeare has entitled one of his plays „Much ado *about nothing*". Could you give the necessary information *about the commerce* of Russia and Sweden, if you were asked? What is your opinion *about the matter?* Never quarrel at all, still less *about trifles.* Soon after the death of John Sigismund a dispute arose *about the crown* of Poland.

4. It expresses being actually doing a thing, or on the point of commencing it.

Let us set *about this business* immediately. I am *about it* now. *What* is he *about?* I was *about complying* with his wishes, when he told me to stop. I was *about separating* from my dearest friends. In all kinds of business diligent preparations must be used before you set *about it.*

5. It answers to the German bei, an.

I have no money *about me.* There is an air of superciliousness *about him* which displeases me. He has not a spark of pride *about him.*

Above.

628. 1. *Above* marks the locality of an object which is in a higher position than another.

If we could ascend into the air a hundred millions of miles, the fixed stars *above us* would still appear no larger than specks. From the summit of Mount Etna we saw several falling stars which still appeared to be as much elevated *above us* as when seen from the plain. In the space of two hours we had got *above the regions* of vegetation. *Above me* there lives an old captain. I saw a fish rise *above the water.*

2. It has the same meaning in a figurative sense.

A sound mind in a sound body is *above all the riches* of the world. Earls, viscounts and barons are all called lords, and all of them are *above a baronet.* He thinks himself *above me.* He is *above working* himself, but he is not *above spending* the hard earnings of his son. I value honesty *above riches,* and honour *above life. Above all things,* do not be too late. It is *above my strength.* Narrow minds think nothing right that is *above their capacity.* O blessed health, thou art *above all gold and treasure.*

3. It means *more than* with reference to number and quantity.

Marseilles is one of the safest ports in the world for moderate-sized merchantmen, of which it will accomodate *above a thousand.* Sometimes, when clouds are electrified, their height is not *above 7 or 8 hundred yards.* This fish weighs *above a pound.* This basket will hold *above a bushel.* He has lived *above ten years* in France. Her stature is *above the average size.*

Across.

629. *Across* marks motion, or extension over an object, from one point to another.

At Cologne they are building a permanent bridge *across the Rhine.* There is a bookseller's shop just *across the street.* I faint smile passed *across her melancholy countenance.* If I come *across him* (meet with him) he shall repent his insolence. I rode *across the country* over hedge and ditch. Byron swam *across the Hellespont.* The English colonies in the West Indies consist of a series of islands, stretching *across the great bay* which nearly divides North from South America.

After.

630. 1. *After* denotes posteriority of time or place.

Rome began to decline *after the accession* of the emperors. *After the death* of Augustus, it was decreed that the women should mourn for him a whole year. One day *after another*, week *after week* passed, still no tidings of the Pacific arrived. House *after house* was burned down at Hamburg, till at length one third of the town was destroyed. *After a storm* comes a calm. Run *after him*, and fetch him back. It is my turn to play *after you*. It is *after three o'clock*.

2. It denotes imitation, and is often synonymous with *according to*.

They offered us pipes and coffee *after the manner* of the Orientals. In one of the encampments were tents and marquees, pitched *after the English fashion*. It is a picture *after Murillo*. He takes *after his uncle*. He was named Louis Napoleon *after the emperor of France*.

3. It has sometimes the meaning of *behind*.

The people ran *after his carriage* shouting all the time.

Against.

631. 1. *Against* denotes an opposition, a contradiction, a striving against.

The fact is that Machiavelli, as is usual with those *against whom* no crime can be proved, was suspected of Atheism. Most of Caesar's soldiers, when taken prisoners refused life, offered to them on condition of serving *against him*. The Greeks maintained their ground *against the whole power* of the Persian army for two days together. A man convinced *against his will* is of the same opinion still. A contented mind is a guard *against many misfortunes*. Hannibal, unconquered in Italy, was recalled to defend his country *against Publius Scipio*.

2. It marks the motion of an object against another which offers resistance.

It is toilsome to row *against the stream*. A drunken guest once said many things *against Pisistratus*, who replied that he was not more angry with him than if any one had run *against him* blindfold. The ship was driven *against the rocks*. He ran his head *against a beam*. Hang the picture *against the wall*. Lean *against me*.

3. It has nearly the same meaning as *towards*, when referring to an approaching period of time.

The church will be finished *against the end* of the summer. Will it be ready *against Sunday?* He will be here *against I come back*.

4. With *over* it means *opposite to*.

Over against the exchange is the town hall.

Along.

632. 1. *Along* marks motion through a space, or the position of objects occupying a space lengthwise.

Poetry mingles with architecture in the Alhambra, it breathes *along the very walls.* The Xenil and the Darro wound their shining streams *along the plain,* and gleamed from among the bowers. There were batteries *along the coast* of the island. There are poplar trees all *along the road.*

2. Joined to the preposition *with* it is a mere expletive.

Come *along with me* (mit mir).

Amid. Amidst.

633. 1. *Amid* and *amidst* mark the position of objects in the middle of others.

A man may be as solitary *amidst a numerous assembly,* as a monk in a cloister. Horace retired to enjoy his muse *amidst the romantic wilds* of his sequestered villa of Tibur, near the lake Albunea. The golden orange glowed *amid the dark foliage.*

2. They are employed in the same sense, figuratively, with abstract nouns.

Amidst the vicious pleasures of a great metropolis, the purest virtues of the heart are corrupted. Flanders *amidst all the horrors* of civil discord, produced painters as rich in fame as they were poor in circumstances. The pliant gondola glided ahead, *amid a shout* which passed from the Piazzetta to the Rialto.

Among. Amongst.

634. *Among* and *amongst* mark the position of objects which are surrounded by, or mixed up with others, and are not much used in a figurative sense.

Ballad poetry attained a high degree of excellence *among the Castilians* before they began to copy Tuscan patterns. *Among all the nations* of antiquity, the structure of their ships was extremely rude. There ought to be no dissensions *among friends. Among the Andes* it is said to rain almost perpetually, while in the plains of Peru it hardly ever rains at all. While Alexander was fighting valiantly *amongst the front rank,* he was struck by an arrow, which Phillip, his physician, extracted. Have you searched *amongst my papers?* The love of music and poetry distinguishes the Venetians even *amongst the tuneful sons* of Italy.

Around. Round.

635. 1. *Around* and *round* mark the position of objects which encircle an other. Circular motion is expressed only by round.

Thirty tyrants stood *around Socrates* and could not break his spirit. *Around the mother* of Darius stood a great crowd of noble females, with hair torn and garments rent. The exploits of Richard threw a splendour *around him*, which endeared him to the Christians and extorted the admiration of the infidels. The moon turns *round the earth* once in 24 hours. General Wolfe having received a wound in the wrist, wrapped a handkerchief *round it*, and continued giving orders without the least emotion. The river Eurotas flows *round Sparta*. The grateful citizens of Vienna crouded *round Sobieski* to touch his hand, his cloak, or even his horse.

2. They mark the state of being spread over a space within a given circumference, or a circular motion within it.

Books and pictures lay scattered all *round the room*. Let us walk *round the garden*. Look *round the room*.

At.

636. 1. *At* points out the situation of objects, in a state of rest, near or in any place.

Cicero was *at his Tusculan villa* when he received the news of the proscription. The age in which Pericles lived was the first which produced *at Athens* an almost perfect orator. The earth is somewhat more flat *at the poles* than *at the equator*. Hume, during his retreat, first *at Rheims*, but chiefly *at La Fleche*, in Anjou, composed his „Treatise on Human Nature". The emperor Aurelian presented Zenobia queen of Palmyra, his captive, with an elegant villa *at Tibur* or Tivoli. I was yesterday *at St. Paul's*. Is Mr. B. *at home?* He is *at dinner. At table. At church. At school.* The Duke of Cambridge is now *at the head* of the army. The Rhine flowed *at our feet*. Who is *at the door?* On arriving *at the village* I put up *at a small* inn. He is a republican *at heart*. We saw Mont Blanc *at a great distance*. Anthony, satiated with Cicero's blood, declared the proscription *at an end*. Truth is always *at hand*. His life is *at stake*. An honest soul is like a ship *at sea*.

2. It marks the time, in answer to the question, *when?*

Cook, the celebrated navigator, was apprenticed *at the age* of thirteen to a shopkeeper, in a small town near Newcastle. The emperor Dioclesian was *at the period* of his resignation only 59 years of age. I rise *at seven* and go to bed *at eleven. At the moment. At the first opportunity*. She was sad *at parting. At* fifty no man easily finds a woman beautiful as the Houries, and wise as Zobeide. I shall be there *at noon*. I am going to visit him *at Christmas*.

3. It points out the object aimed at.

It is said that Augustus played *at dice, marbles,* or *nuts,* with boys of little stature, whom he collected from all quarters. The fool laughs only *at the folly* of others, not *at his own*. Take good aim *at the mark* before you shoot *at it*. Frequently to laugh is the surest way of being laughed *at*.

4. It expresses a state or condition, for the most part before an abstract noun.

He is *at enmity* with many people, and consequently cannot be faultless. It is a pity that France and England should ever be *at war*

with each other. Rome was now *at peace,* and the temple of Janus was shut for the second time. Are you *at leisure?* How sweet to breathe *at large* the vernal air! He is now *at rest.* Are you *at liberty?*

5. It points out the manner of an action, in answer to the question, *how?*

The king's head was severed from his body *at a blow.* The old minstrel drained the gobled *at a draught.* The cavalry charged *at full speed.* He spoke *at random.* He wrote *at great length?* I saw how it was *at one glance.*

6. It is used in a great many idiomatical expressions.

At his request. I am *at* a loss. *At* your own discretion. *At* least. *At* best. *At* all events. *At* any rate. I have no money *at* all. *At* your ease. Do that *at* your peril! *At* hazard. I am *at* a great expense. They are sold *at* sixpence a pound. *At* that rate you will never have done. He can play music *at* sight. The moon is now *at* full. He has something *at* heart. What are you *at?* *At* your service. Have *at* him. All *at* once. Men *at* arms.

Athwart.

637. *Athwart* marks the direction over or through a space.

The beam of the setting sun darted *athwart the painted windows* of the old abbey. The idea darted for a moment *athwart my mind.*

With thee, my bark, I'll swiftly go *athwart the foaming brine,*
Nor care what land thou bear'st me to, so not again to mine.

Before.

638. 1. *Before* denotes position in the front of an object.

Before the high altar was erected a throne on which sat William the Conqueror. In a few days the English king arrived *before Calais,* to which he immediately laid siege. In England meat is generally roasted *before the fire.* The matter was brought *before the parliament.* A confused multitude soon gives way *before the attack* of regular soldiers. When Alexander commanded our Henry the Second to submit to the lash *before the tomb* of a rebellious subject, he was himself an exile.

2. It marks priority of time.

Many ages, said Cato, *before his time* there were ballads in praise of illustrious men. In 1492 Columbus set sail *before sunrise,* in presence of a vast crowd of spectators. At a quarter *before six.* The day *before yesterday.* Our holidays commence a week *before Christmas.*

3. It marks precedence in rank, order and succession.

The Greek writers are prized *before all others* by the learned. The Prince of Wales comes *before the Princess royal,* though the latter is older. Never marry but for love; prefer the person *before money,* virtue *before beauty,* the mind *before the body.*

Behind.

639. 1. *Behind* denotes the position of an object at the back of, or following another.

The silver moon peered from *behind the clouds.* She had an elegantly dressed footman walking *behind her.* She was concealed *behind the curtain.*

2. It denotes the remaining of an object after the removal of another.

He left an immense fortune *behind him.* The Turks fled in all directions before Sobieski, leaving *behind them* their tents, baggage and cannon.

3. It marks inferiority.

Bohemia seems to have been, in all respects, far *behind the rest* of the German states in civilisation. James is *behind his brother* in knowledge.

Below.

640. 1. *Below* denotes inferiority of position, not so high as something else.

Below me rolled the golden green waters of the Rhine. There were five distinct torrents of lava, one of which extended above two miles *below us,* and was flowing towards Portici.

2. It denotes inferiority of rank or excellence.

An earl is one degree *below a marquis.* Be above envy, if possible; never consent to be *below it.* He who thinks his place *below him* will certainly be *below his place.*

Beneath.

641. 1. *Beneath* means *under* with regard to position.

How many brave sleep *beneath the pitiless wave.* We saw the inn at which we had put up dashed to the ground, burying the inhabitants *beneath the ruins.*

2. It means lower in dignity or excellence.

At 24 Byron found himself on the highest pinnacle of literary fame, with Scott, Wordsworth, Southey, and a host of distinguished writers *beneath his feet.* He who is puffed up with the first gale of prosperity will bend *beneath the first blast* of adversity. Coarse loud laughter is *beneath the character* of a gentleman.

Beside. Besides.

642. 1. *Beside* expresses the position of an object at the side of, or near another.

I love to pore *beside a brook,* where flow'rs adorn each verdant nook. We found him sitting at the foot an old oak tree, with his gun on the ground *beside him.*

2. Beside means also *not according to, not in agreement with.*

It is quite *beside my purpose.* He is *beside himself* with passion. It is *beside* the scope of this article to criticise the political writings of Milton.

3. *Besides* expresses *more than, over and above.*

Besides the town of Belgrade, the two fine provinces of Wallachia and Servia had also been ceded to the Turks. Money is often the only patent of nobility, *besides lofty* pretentions. William the Red found that the treasure amounted to sixty thousand pounds in silver, *besides gold* and jewels. I had *besides all this,* an earnest desire to see the great men of the earth.

Between. Betwixt.

643. 1. *Between* denotes the position of an object occupying the intermediate space from one object to another.

The straits of Thermopylae is a narrow pass 25 feet broad, *between Thessaly and Phocis.* The Alps *are between France and Italy.*

2. It is used figuratively of the relation of one object or person to another.

In 1814 a treaty of peace *between Great Britain* and the United States of America was concluded at Ghent. The invention of the steam engine has greatly facilitated the communication *between different countries.* For 115 years there was always either war, or preparation for war, or treacherous peace, *between Rome* and her rival, Carthage. *Between a man* and his wife nothing ought to rule but love. *Between ourselves.* Simplicity is the mean *between ostentation* and rusticity. *Between doing* and saying there is a great difference.

Observation. Betwixt is now seldom used.

Beyond.

644. 1. *Beyond* denotes a position on the other side of an object, farthest from the speaker.

Falling stars, in all probability, move in regions far *beyond the bounds* that some philosophers have assigned to our atmosphere. The Allobroges, who had villages and possessions *beyond the Rhone,* took refuge with Caesar. The Romans did not allow the nations *beyond the Alps* to plant the olive and the vine, that the oliveyards and vineyards of Italy might be of more value. The American universities, in short, recognise a world, and a broad one, too, lying *beyond the college walls.*

2. Figuratively it denotes *above, in a greater degree, exceeding.*

The poetry of Dante is picturesque, *beyond any* that ever was written. Some learned writers prolong their sentences to a tiresome

extent, *beyond the reach* of a common comprehension. As the sultan's army under Mustapha approached Vienna, the terror of the citizens was *beyond all description.*

By.

645. 1. *By,* when used with a passive verb, denotes the agent or doer of the action.

The exploits of Athelstane were commemorated *by the Anglo Saxons,* and those of Canute *by the Danes,* in rude poems, of which a few fragments have come down to us. The true value of liberty can be conceived only *by minds* that are free. King Alfred was encouraged in his studies *by his mother,* who was a woman of taste. The descent from the cross was painted *by Rubens.* No man was ever more trusted and loved *by his people,* more respected and feared *by other kings* than Charlemagne.

2. It points out the instrument or means by which an action is done.

But even when thus placed *by violence* at the head of affairs, Cromwell did not assume unlimited power. Some effects are found out *by their causes* and some causes *by their effects.* The senses are the doors and windows *by* which iniquity enters the soul. Happy the king who is great *by justice* and the people who are free *by obedience.* It is more difficult to arrest *by reason* the son of pleasure in his course than to convert a ruffian. It is the business of a government to impress all ranks with subordination, whether this be effected *by a diamond buckle,* or a virtuous edict, *by a sumptuary law,* or a glass necklace. Sir Robert Peel was killed *by a fall* from his horse. Despots govern *by terror.* She is noble *by birth* and made good *by virtue.*

3. It points out the manner in which a action is done.

To become learned you must not study *by fits and starts,* but constantly. Old age comes upon us *by stealth.* To learn *by heart* must not be entirely neglected. The fire consumed his body *by slow degrees.* I went quite *by* chance. He took her *by the hand.* He takes snuff by the pound. Go *by turns.* Vice steals upon us *by little and little.* He took it from me *by force.* He buys them *by hundreds at a time.* I shall go *by the railroad.*

4. It is placed after a word to be repeated, in order to express the order of succession.

Explain this passage of Horace *word by word.* I will examine the articles *one by one. Year by year,* it must and will go back; *year by year,* the tone of public feeling must sink lower down.

5. It denotes vicinity.

Do not sit *by* the fire in wet boots. Sit down here *by me.* He lives at a pretty cottage *by the brook side.* I will stand *by him* to the last.

6. It refers to a point of time, and answers to the German gegen.

We were in our saddles *by sunrise* and began our journey. Dinner will be ready *by the time* you are back. *By the first break of dawn* the warriors were arrayed for battle on the mountains.

7. With a reflective pronoun it means *alone.*

I live *by myself.* Place it *by itself.* The house stands *by itself.* We started off again, in high spirits, very much delighted to be *by ourselves.*

8. It is nearly synonymous with *according to, judging by.*

It is four o'clock *by my watch.* I know he is not pleased, *by his manner. By the position* of the sun it must be about six o'clock.

9. It is used in swearing and attesting.

By my honour! By Heavens!

10. In composition it denotes something apart, out of the direct way.

A *by-word.* A *by-lane.*

11. It is used in many idiomatical expressions.

By land. By sea. By water. By day. By night. By way of Cologne. By all means. By no means. By way of jest. By good luck. By the way. She is taller than her sister by two inches. I am younger by ten years. A plank ten feet long by two feet broad. By and by.

Concerning.

646. Concerning means *touching, relating to.*

The opinions of authors *concerning the origin* of letters are very various. I read some old legends *concerning the origin* of the city.

Down.

647. Down denotes movement from a higher place to a lower one.

We scrambled *down the mountain.* I cannot have so much going up and *down stairs.*

During.

648. *During* marks duration of times.

Stars are visible through telescopes, *during the day,* unless in that part of the sky very near to the sun. *During many ages* minstrelsy retained its influence over both the Teutonic and the Celtic race. The order of knights templars arose *during the first fervour* of the crusades. Can the moon have no other use than to illumine the earth *during the night?* Nor did I ever once, *during my rambles* in America, see a woman exposed to the slightest act of rudeness.

For.

649. 1. *For* points out an object as the aim, end, or reward, obtained, or to be obtained, by the action described by the verb.

If a man abuses himself, you may be sure he is fishing *for approbation.* The great art of life is to play *for much* and stake little. William assured his men that they were to fight not merely *for victory,* but *for life.* He who wishes his virtue to be made public labours not *for virtue,* but *for glory.* Some run headlong into danger, because they have not the courage to wait *for it.* What did you pay *for the book?* Olivia wished *for many lovers.* Vain is your search *for happiness.* Send *for a physician.* Is *the cloth* paid *for?* Give me change *for this bank note.* He struggled hard *for life.* Call *for a bottle* of wine. Call *for me* at my house. Let us hope *for better times.* To whom shall I apply *for assistance?*

2. It points out the object for whose sake, or in whose favour, the action of the verb is done.

Milton did not feel *for the literature* of modern Italy the same veneration which he entertained *for the remains* of Athenian and Roman poetry. Alfred translated various works into Saxon *for the use* of the people. Commend a fool *for his wit,* or a knave *for his folly,* and they will take you into their bosom. Ireland has many excellent harbours and is well situated *for trade.* The Vengeance exacted by the spouse of Attila *for the murder* of Siegfried was celebrated in rhymes, of which Germany is still justly pround. Charlemagne never neglected the business of the public *for his private pleasure.* Before you give way to anger, try to find a reason *for not being angry.* Convert the imperfections of others into a mirror *for* discovering our own. I cannot blame you *for it.* He was punished for his folly. *For what crime* did he suffer? He died *for his country.* Act *for yourself.* Travel *for instruction* as well as amusement. His actions speak *for him.* He was alarmed *for the safety* of his child. I am sorry *for him.* Take my word *for it.* He trembled *for his life.*

3. It points out the locality to be attained or reached, and in this sense is placed before the names of places.

Columbus steered directly *for the Canary islands.* Leaving Cincinnati at eleven o'clock, we embarked *for Louisville* in the Pike steamboat. The time of leaving Toronto *for Kingstone* is noon. When does the steamer start *for Dover?* After breakfasting at Whitehall, we took the stage-coach *for Albany.* The frightened stag made *for the water.* Since the Upper Sea is in a state of blockade, I shall sail *for the Lower,* and make *for Croton* or Thurii. The Invincible Armada sailed *for England* in 1588.

4. It is used of time and space to mark duration and extent.

After the seven years' war Germany, *for many years,* enjoyed all the blessings of peace and plenty. Augustus, *for more than forty years,* lodged in the same chamber. *For some days* we had a dead calm at sea. *For hours* together we would watch the dolphins and porpoises as they rolled and leaped around the vessel. Do you doubt, *for a moment,* of my honour? He is lamed *for life. For many miles* the Kaatskill mountains towered in the blue distance.

5. It is used in the sense of *concerning, as regards.*

Rather, *for me,* restore the forest and the Indian village! *For the rest,* I put my trust in the spirit in which these pages have been conceived. As *for fear,* it is unknown to him. *For his age* he is very tall. He is strong *for his size.* It is well done *for a beginner.* The elephant is unequalled *for strength.* He may be rich *for aught* I know. *For myself* I love the race in spite of all their vices.

6. It has nearly the same meaning as *in spite of* (tros).

I don't believe him, *for all his protestations.* As a horse is a horse *for all his golden trappings,* so are men of purchased titles but servants in rich liveries.

7. It points out an object as a substitute for another object in apposition with it.

Wet had fish *for dinner.* I despise him *for a fool.* O that I should be taken *for a thief.*

From.

650. 1. *From* points out the object which is the starting place, or point of departure, whether of time or place, where the action commences.

Light travels *from the sun* to the earth in seven minutes and a half. Men often go *from love* to ambition, but seldom return *from ambition* to love. Fortune is like a bird which flies *from tree* to tree.

2. It marks the object which is the source or origin out of which the action arises, or from which anything is derived.

He that makes a book merely *from books* may be useful, but can scarcely be great. *From him* I have learned humility and wisdom. Do not judge *from appearances,* they are deceitful. The government derives considerable revenues *from the profits* of the public conveyances. The Latin comedies are free translations *from Demophilus,* Menander and Apollodorus. The Latin philosophy was borrowed *from the Portico* and the Academy. Thermopylae took its name *from the hot baths* for which the place was remarkable. The knights templars acquired *from the piety* of the faithful, ample possessions in every country of Europe. Women act more *from love* and duty, than *from reason* or prudence. Jupiter is surrounded by zones or belts, which, *from their frequent changes,* are supposed to consist of clouds.

3. It points out the object from which something is separated, or removed, protected, defended, distinguished &c.

One of Joseph's plans was to free the peasantry *from the vassalage* in which they are still held. Sulphur is found near volcanoes in combination with metals, *from which* it is separated by sublimation in a furnace. One arm of the Danube separates the city of Vienna *from a large suburb,* called Leopoldstadt. He is shut out *from the world,* and cut off *from all interco urse* with his fellow men. It is as easy to keep a hungry lion *from his prey,* as a fool *from his folly.* Defend us *from all danger,* O Lord! Guard us *from all evil!*

This cloak will protect you *from the rain*. The Roman and Teutonic languages differ much *from each other*. I cannot distinguish one *from the other*. Humanity shrinks *from the cruelty* of such fanatics. They concealed his death *from the soldiers*. Gustavus Vasa delivered Sweden *from the Danish yoke*.

4. *From* is used in combination with many other prepositions.

Remove the screen *from before the stove*. A crowd had flocked in from the Court House, and a voice *from among them* called out to the landlord. Rise, moon, thou daughter of the sky, look *from between thy clouds*. The Xenil and the Darro gleamed *from among the bowers*. A lynx, stealing *from behind a rock*, bore him to a neighbouring thicket. She cast a sly glance *from under her dark eyebrows*. A sound came *from without the gate*.

In.

651. 1. *In* marks an object which represents a certain extent of space, or a space of time, within the bounds of which the action takes place.

In 1756 one hundred and twenty three Englishmen perished *in* the black hole at Calcutta. Milton wrote *in an age* of philosophers and theologians. Ennius, who flourished *in the time* of the second Punic War, was regarded, *in the Augustan age*, as the father of Latin poetry. Slaves remain indolently contented *in captivity* Henry the seventh left an immense sum of money *in his treasury*. William Pitt died *in January* 1806. Napoleon resided *in the island* of Elba. Pope, Addison and Steele lived *in the reign* of queen Anne. Swallows leave Europe *in Autumn* and return *in* Spring. I saw him *in the street*. Do you stay long *in town?* He is *in bed*.

2. It is used in the same sense figuratively.

The Peruvian Incas were celebrated *in verses* which the people learned by heart. The ancient Romans sang ballads *in praise* of great men. The night before the battle of Hastings was spent by the English *in feasting*, by the Normans *in devotion*. The belief *in amulets* is still universal *in the East*. The taste of the English *in landscape gardening* is unrivalled. Charlemagne was a giant in his stature as *in his mind*. He was abstemious *in his food*, and simple *in his dress*. It is a hard heart that is not moved by a woman *in tears*. He is always *in a good humour*. Do not fall *in love* with beauty alone. She is *in want* of something. Spend your spare time *in reading* good books. It was done *in friendship*. Never speak *in anger*. Put your trust *in God*. *In this manner* we rode in Hyde Park. I am sick both *in body* and *in mind*. *In* my opinion. Take it *in turns*. As far as lies *in my power* *In spite* of himself. He died *in the defence* of his country. *In obedience* to your commands. I will send him something *in return*. It was said *in joke*. *In honour* of the day. *In answer* to your letter. *In addition* to this. He spoke *in my behalf*. I am *in a hurry*.

3. It marks a future time.

In a few minutes we entered the Ohio again. *In due time* we mustered once again before the merchant tailor's. I shall be ready *in half an hour*.

Into.

652. 1. *Into* denotes movement towards the interior of an object.

Printing was first brought *into England* by Caxton, a mercer, in 1471. Saladin descending from Jerusalem burst *into the town* of Jaffa, and drove the inhabitants *into the citadel*. Peacocks were introduced *into Europe* from the Asiatic Indies.

2. In the same sense figuratively.

Prussia was erected *into a kingdom* in 1701. Xerxes thought that his immense army wouly terrify the Greeks *into submission*. The variation of the compass is a mystery of nature, *into which* the sagacity of man has not yet been able to penetrate. King Alfred translated various works *into Saxon*, for the use of the people. In the course of time the Saxon and Norman languages melted *into each other*.

Near.

653. *Near* denotes vicinity to an object.

The cathedral at Cologne is *near the Rhine*. He lives at a place called Hornsey, *near London*. I was very *near being* too late. Vessels large may venture more, but little boats should keep *near shore*.

Of.

654. 1. *Of* expresses the relation of two objects, the first of which represents a certain part or portion of the other.

A great number *of religious sects* sprang up in England during the civil wars. The silver coin of England contains fifteen parts *of silver* to one *of copper*. Mercury travels round the sun at the distance of 37 millions *of miles*. The quantity *of water* which flows into the coal mines is sometimes enormous. In successful times as many as from five to seven hundred hogsheads *of pilchards* have been taken from one shoal. About three tons *of oil* are commonly obtained from a large spermaceti whale. A glass *of water*. A bottle *of wine*. A couple *of ducks*. The castle *of Drachenfels* stands on the summit of one of the seven Mountains. The cathedral church *of St. Paul* in London was finished in 1760.

2. It is the sign of the genitive case.

The heavens declare the Glory *of God*. How striking are the effects *of the regular vicissitude of the seasons!* how pleasing the springing *of flowers!* In the depths *of the Ocean*, upon the snowy summits *of the Alps*, in the boundless wilds *of Africa*, and along the vast range *of the stupendous Alps*, the hand *of God* may be traced. Nickel is found in different parts *of Germany*. The Hebrews called echo the daughter *of the voice*.

3. It is employed before a proper noun when it is preceded by the common noun which it qualifies. In German such nouns are in apposition.

The Elector of Bavaria asserted that the *Kingdom of Bohemia* belonged to him. The *house of Stuart* began with James the first and ended with Anne. The longest day is the *twenty first of June.* Napoleon died on the *fifth of May* 1821, in the *island of St. Helena.* By the accession of George the first the *electorate of Hanover* was annexed to Britain. The *marquisate of Brandenburg* was given to the noble *family of Hohenzollern.* The eruption of Vesuvius in the year 79 overwhelmed the two famous *cities of Herculaneum and Pompeii.* Richard took the *city of Acre.* Near the town of Newcastle, in the *county of Northumberland,* are vast beds of coal. The foundation of the extensive *empire of Russia* was laid by the valour and policy of Peter the Great. Henry gained a great victory over the French at Agincourt, a village in the *province of Artois.* The *principality of Wales* contains twelve counties.

4. It is also used before other proper nouns and between common nouns, the second of which qualifies the first. It answers to the German von.

Victoria, *Queen of England,* is respected for her domestic virtues. The *Duke of Wellington* attained a great age. The *King of Prussia* was one of the first to recognise the title of the Emperor Napoleon. A *friend of mine* was in the Arctic when it was lost. Milton was a *man of* great *learning.* A *horse of small value.* She appeared to be a *lady of quality.*

5. It points out the object which is the origin of something, or the cause of the action.

The Latin metres are *of Greek origin.* The grand vizier's tent was *of painted calico.* William Wallace was *of an ancient family.* In 1499 Sebastian Cabot *of Bristol* discovered Newfoundland. Duke Schomberg was descended *of a noble German family.* The web of our life is *of a mingled yarn,* good and ill together. The ship is entirely *of iron.* He is ill *of a fever.*

6. It is used in many idiomatical expressions.

Of course. *Of* all things I should like it. In days *of* yore. I have not seen him *of* late. *Of* a sudden. I visit him sometimes *of* an evening. I am *of* opinion. *Of* old. *Of* necessity. *Of* a truth. *Of* right. *Of* his own accord. He is *of* age. The gun went off *of* itself.

Off.

655. *Off* marks an object from which something else is removed, or is at a distance.

The Spanish fleet was defeated by sir John Jervis *off Cape St. Vincent,* and the Dutch fleet *off Camperdown* by Admiral Duncan in 1797. I have not been *off my legs* all day. Do it *off hand.* He eats *off silver.* Macready is *off the stage.* He fell *off his horse.* The Canary bird jumps *off* and on *its perch* for half an hour together. I live about a mile *off the town.* The explosions became more and more vivid, and at every tremendous burst of fire our friend jumped half *off his seat.*

On. Upon.

656. 1. *On,* or *upon,* denotes the position of an object which rests, or which is placed on the surface of another.

Anthony ordered the head of Cicero to be fixed *upon the Rostra,* between his two hands. On the march, Julius Caesar sometimes went *on horseback,* but more frequently *on foot.* What does thou fear? Thou hast Caesar *on board.* The fog lay so thick *on Sedgemoor* that no object could be discerned at fifty paces. Then Monmouth threw himself *on the ground* and crawled to the king's feet. Rochester's wife, who was *on a sick bed,* solicited the honour of a visit from the much injured queen.

2. It has the same meaning figuratively.

Niagara was at once stamped *upon my heart,* an image of beauty. Poetry produces an illusion *on the eye* of the mind, as a magic lantern *on the eye* of the body. Latin Literature was fashioned *on Greek models.* Cicero fled to Astura, the nearest villa which he had *upon the sea.* From Mount Etna you look down on Sicily as *on a map. On the other side* was a body of which the weight balanced even the weight of the Papacy, the mighty Order of Jesus.

3. It marks a particular point of time when the action takes place, or immediately after which it takes place.

Cicero was killed *on the seventh* of December, about ten days from the settlement of the Triumvirate. *On the night* of the second of August the French bombarded Saragossa. Socrates, *on the last day* of his life, discoursed on the immortality of the soul. The Duke of Orleans, *on being appointed* Regent, demanded the power of pardoning. *On this* the boy said, „I have learned to endure a parent's anger." Fine-Scholar, *on hearing* of the Red King's death, hurried to Winchester.

4. It is used in many idiomatical expressions.

He was arrested *on* suspicion. I did it *on* purpose to convince him of my resolution. *On* pain of death. Nothing shall be wanting *on* my part. *On* the contrary. *On* no account. *On* due consideration. *On* change. *On* account of. *On* condition. We are *on* good terms. *On* my honour. *On* my word.

Out of.

657. 1. *Out of* denotes that an object is not *in* the space marked by the noun.

Before Grafton's men got *out of the lane,* more than a hundred of them had been killed. The life of man is like water poured *out of a bucket,* it disappears on the earth. Wherefore I caused them to go forth *out of the land* of Egypt.

2. It has the same meaning figuratively.

Pride hurries many a man to get *out of debt.* Genius is supposed to be a power of producing excellencies which are *out of the reach* of the rules of art. Misfortune is apt to put a man *out of humour*

with the world. The business of the dramatist is to keep himself *out of sight*, and not to let anything appear but his characters. The severe frosts threw the peasants *out of employment*. *Out of sight out of mind!* is an old proverb.

3. It denotes source, origin, cause, or motive.

Out of a little child you may make what you please except a genius. *Out of raw levies* Cromwell created an army, the bravest and the most terrible in war that Europe had seen. The Red King who made money *out of every thing*, stayed at home, busily squeezing more money *out of Normans* and English. I loitered at Mrs. Vanhomrigh's, and *out of mere listlessness* dined there, very often.

Over.

658. 1. *Over* denotes rest or movement, above or over the surface of an object.

Pythagoras passed *over many barbarous regions* on foot. Tullia, the wife of Tarquinius, drove her affrighted horses *over her bleeding father*. The picture of my old grandmother hung for many years *over the chimney-piece*. Clive and his Englishmen were now objects of terror all *over the East*. Bede who lived in the eighth century was celebrated all *over Europe* for his learning. Just before the accession of Charles the fifth, a new race of people, the gypsies, appeared in Bohemia, and spread themselves *over Hungary* and Moravia. I cannot pass over the thirty years' war without giving a relation of its commencement. Dresden china became celebrated all *over the world*.

2. Figuratively, it marks an object which is under the power or influence of another.

Isabella was one of the purest spirits that ever ruled *over the destinies* of a nation. Maximilian the second ruled like a father *over children*. I have the same advantage *over him* as he has *over his brother*. Knowledge has always ascendency *over ignorance*.

3. Idiomatical expressions.

I saw him *over* night. He lives just *over* the way. You are all *over* dirt.

Since.

659. *Since*, used only of time, refers to a point of time, between which and the present time the action of the verb takes place.

No poem written *since Milton's Paradise Lost* is worthy of being compared to it. Hamburg has become a beautiful city *since the great fire*. I have not seen him *since yesterday*.

Through.

660. 1. *Through* points out the object, through the interior of which the action passes.

The blood diffuses itself *through the veins* of the whole body. Light moves *through a space* equal to the circumference of our globe in the eighth part of a second. The chants of the Welch bards preserved, *through ages* of darkness, a faint and doubtful memory of Arthur. Before a reputation is established, it passes *through all the gradatory shades* from black to white.

2. It points out the object by means of which the action is accomplished.

There is nobody to be blamed but yourself, for you have lost the situation *through your own folly*. I received the book from England *through a friend*. Many a man has fallen *through too vast an ambition*.

Throughout.

661. Throughout marks the object, in all parts of which, from one end to the other of which, the action takes place.

Count Thurn said it was an old custom, *throughout Bohemia*, to throw from the windows such as were deemed enemies to their country. The spirit of rebellion spread *throughout the land*. I have travelled *throughout the whole of Europe*. In his conservatory he has the most beautiful flowers *throughout the whole year*.

Till. Until.

662. *Till* and *until* are used only of time, and denote the period up to which to action or condition lasts.

But Home's Douglas was not acted *till 1756*, and Macpherson's Ossian not published *till 1760*. Wait *until* I call you. If an enslaved nation wait *till* it is fit for freedom, before struggling for it, it may wait for ever.

To.

663. 1. *To* marks motion towards an object which is the goal to be attained.

Pausanius was unwilling to return *to Sparta* and betook himself *to Colonae*. The army which Bonaparte led *to Italy* was one of the finest that ever existed. Cromwell went down *to his grave* in the fulness of power and fame. The Congress adjourned *to Baltimore*. Washington speaks of this event in a letter *to his brother*. When Philip returned *to Madrid*, in the beginning of 1703 he found the finances more embarassed than ever. William Parr lived *to the great age* of 152 years.

2. In the same sense figuratively.

Milton could stoop *to a plain style*, sometimes even *to a bald style*, but false brilliancy was his aversion. The path of virtue may

be dark and dreary, but it leads *to extensive plains* of happiness and repose. Man is born *to trouble*. Such was the genius of Chatham who armed his countrymen *to conquest* in every land. As soon as the dramatist attracts notice *to his personal feelings*, the illusion is broken. Even *to the present day*, Cromwell's character is popular with the great body of our contrymen. *To the last* Charles's only quarrel with his parliament was that they often gave him trouble, and would not always give him money.

3. It is the sign of the dative case.

Give it *to your brother*. It is the part of the lyric poet to abandon himself without reserve *to his own emotions*. No species of fiction is so delightful *to us* as the old English drama. They took the oath of allegiance *to the king*. King William gave *to Burnet* the first bishoprick that became vacant after the Revolution.

4. It points out the object with which another is compared.

What sculpture is *to a block of marble*, education is *to the soul*. We are sure that the superiority of the Paradise Lost *to the Paradise Regained* is not more decided than the superiority of the Paradise Regained *to every poem* which has since made its appearance. They seemed to forget that in the Athenian democracy there were ten slaves *to one citizen*. Bacon compared Essex *to Pisistratus* who succeeded in establishing tyranny in Athens. That is nothing *to what* I saw at Berlin.

5. It points out the relationship in which one object stands to another. (See rule 293).

Charles II. was heir *to the conquests* and *to the influence* of the able usurper who had excluded him. Catherine, wife of Peter the great, was heiress *to no other inheritance* than the virtues and frugality of her parents. Walpole said he had been long taxed with all our misfortunes; but did he counsel the present King of Prussia, or was he first minister *to the King of Poland?* I am a declared enemy *to all dissimulation*. He is a stranger *to me*. What is that *to me?* He is no friend *to learning*. Charles II. was a stranger *to manly friendship* and gratitude. I, who am brother *to the man* who saved Count Helmaar's life.

6. It is used in the sense of *according to, judging by*.

Venus is the brightest and to *appearance* the largest of all the planets.

Towards. Toward.

664. *Towards* denotes motion in the direction of an object, and differs from *to* in not necessarily supposing that the object is reached.

Columbus observed that the magnetic needle did not point exactly to the polar star, but varied *towards the west*, and as he proceeded this variation increased. We proceeded slowly *towards the town*. Byron's political opinions, though like all his opinions unsettled, leaned strongly *towards the side* of liberty. Themistocles turned all

his thoughts *towards the improvement* of the navy. Maximilian the second's chief attention seemed to be directed *towards the happiness* of his subjects. The first step *toward vice* is to make a mystery of what is innocent. Genius ever turns *towards that quarter* in which fame shines brightest.

Under.

665. 1. *Under* points out the object beneath the surface of which the action takes place.

The man who has nothing to boast of but his ancestors is like a potato, the only good belonging to him is *under ground*. The cavalier and his companion remained *under cover* of the trees, as if keeping watch.

2. It is employed figuratively in the same sense.

A vast extent of territory has within half a century fallen *under the power* of an association of English merchants, called the East India Company. A still larger portion *is under the protection,* but not *under the direct government* of the company. His health sank *under the hardships* he had to endure. Even the Bohemians declared themselves quite happy *under the government* of Maximilian the second. The criminal lies *under sentence of death*. The fleet is *under sail*. It is *under my care*.

Up.

666. *Up* denotes movement upwards, from a lower position to a higher one.

Macbeth rode out with a few attendants, to see the oxen drag the wood and the stones *up the hill*. An immense number of foreigners, especially Englishmen, go *up the Rhine*. The Indian scrambled *up the rock* with great agility. We rode *up* and down *the Champs Elysées*. Come *up stairs*.

With.

667. 1. *With* points out an object which is not alone, but accompanied by another.

Dante's angels are good men, *with wings*. Let my body be interred, said Isabella, in the monastery of San Francisco, *with no other* monument than a plain stone and an inscription. At the battle of Crecy there were three crowned heads, besides the French King; *with all the nobility* and great vassals of the crown of France. I am residing *with Mr. Mavor*. Come and dine *with us* to-day. Mr. S., *with his family,* has arrived in town to-day. Remain *with me* a little longer.

2. The object marked by the preposition is some circumstance accompanying the action of the verb.

In 1727 inoculation for the small pox was first tried on criminals, *with success*. The crew of the Pinta instantly began Te Deum, and

were joined by those of the other ships, *with tears* of joy and transports of congratulation. I shall do it *with much pleasure*. *With your permission* I will go. She entered the room, *with tears* in her eyes, and *with her dress and hair* all in disorder. The business of poetry is *with images*, not *with words*. *With these words* he departed.

3. It points out the passive cause, means, or instrument which is used by the acting agent to effect the action.

Dogs defend themselves *with their teeth*, and oxen *with their horns*. The oracle had declared that Athens should only defend herself *with wooden walls*. We are charmed *with the songs of birds*, soothed *with the buzz of insects*, and pleased *with the sportive motion* of fishes, because they are expressions of enjoyment. The mountains, crowned *with snow*, seemed to melt into the blue sky. The ear is charmed *with the warbling* of the nightingale. I was almost breathless *with wonder*, as I gazed on the streams of fire issuing from the mountain. Men are caught *with pleasure*, as fishes *with a hook*.

Within.

668. 1. *Within* denotes that the action takes place inside the boundaries of a certain space, or a portion of time.

The Jesuits had several colleges *within the walls* of Belgrade which the Turks dissolved. Vice is continually drawing multitudes *within its tempting sphere*. The view from Mount Etna is boundless, nor is there any one object *within the circle* of vision to interrupt it. Ireland, from the introduction of steam navigation, is now *within a few hours' sail* of the west coast of Great Britain.

2. *Within* is used in combination with the preposition to.

The wood approached *to within a mile* of Ashby.

Without.

669. 1. *Without* denotes position on the outside of an object, and is the contrary of *within*.

A great battle was fought just *without the walls* of the town. I stood just *without the gate* waiting for him.

2. It marks an object which is not possessed, or in the absence of which the action takes place.

We feel that we could talk to Dante's demons *without any emotions* of unearthly awe. Charles the first raised taxed *without the consent* of his parliament. A person may be solitary *without being alone*. Richard the first seems to have been contented with the glory *without the advantages* of victory. Cromwell never fought a battle *without gaining a victory*.

Conjunctions.

Simple Conjunctions.

And.

670. Two comparatives are joined by *and* to express a continued increase in degree.

The clouds became *darker and darker* every moment. The waves came rolling on *nearer and nearer.*

As.

671. 1. *As* corresponds to the German als, wie, indem.

As satirist Seume was too bitter to be amusing. *As* riches and favour forsake a man, we discover him to be a fool, though nobody could find it out in his prosperity. The colours of life in youth and age appear different; *as* the face of nature in winter and spring.

2. *As* answers to the German da, weil, the correlative so not being translated into English, except great emphasis is required.

It is impossible that I should forgive you, *as* you never deserved my resentment. I partly saw your delusion then, and *as* it was out of my power to restrain, I could only pity it. *As* Petrarch was better acquainted with the nature of solitude, *so* he cherished it with greater fondness.

3. *As* is used when comparison is made in the positive degree.

As great and good in pace, *as* he was great and good in war, King Alfred never rested from his labours to improve his people. Honest, *as* you think him, I would not trust him. Old *as* I am, I can sting him yet.

4. *As* is sometimes omitted.

My intention was, (as) you know, to go to the Crimea. Idleness and drunkeness, (as) I heard, had reduced him to extreme poverty.

Because.

672. *Because* is stronger in expression than *as.*

The people of Athens laughed at Themistocles, *because* he was ignorant of the manners of the world, and that accomplishment which is called good breeding. I fly from pleasure, *because* pleasure has ceased to please. I am lonely, *because* I am miserable.

Before.

673. *Before,* when a conjunction, precedes the subject in a sentence.

I had scarcely taken orders a year *before I* began to think seriously of matrimony. Many ages elapsed *before* men removed from the regions where their creator had originally placed them. Men are far advanced in improvement *before* commerce becomes an object of importance.

Besides.

674. *Besides* is often a conjunction, and must not be confounded with the preposition *beside.* (See rule 642.)

I cannot assist him, *besides,* if I could, he does not deserve it.

But.

675. *But* has a great variety of significations.

1. (Aber, allein.) In this signification it is placed at the beginning of the sentence.

When amber is rubbed, it is susceptible of a perfume which is slight, *but* not disagreeable. It is true, said Themistocles, I never play upon the lute; *but* I know how to raise a small and inconsiderate city to greatness and glory. Be not too hasty to trust or to admire the teachers of morality; they discourse like angels, *but* they live like men.

2. (Sondern.) After a negation.

The moon *not only* at times darkens the earth, *but* the earth also casts its shadow on the moon, occasioning what is called an eclipse. The truly good government is *not* that which concentrates magnificence in a court, *but* that which diffuses happiness among a people. Great works are performed *not* by strength, *but* by perseverance. The passions *never* clear the understanding, *but* raise darkness, clouds and confusion in the soul.

3. (Nur.)

If she would *but* let him have Silesia, he would, he said, stand by her against any power which might try to deprive her of her other dominions. Life is filled with enjoyments, if we will *but* enjoy them. Language is only the instrument of science, and words are *but* the signs of ideas. Too many masters at once serve *but* to perplex the mind. We act well *but* when we are most responsible.

4. (Als.) After a negative.

The rainbow is *never* seen *but* in rainy weather, where the sun illuminates the falling rain, and when the spectator turns his back to the sun. It *cannot* be supposed that Newton and Locke taught *nothing but* the truth, far less that they taught the whole truth. Youth learn

nothing effectually *but* by frequent repetition. I am ashamed to think that I could *not* secure myself from vice, *but* by retiring from the exercise of virtue. *None but* the virtuous can have a friend.

5. (Außer, ausgenommen, nur nicht.)

We are too apt to blame every body *but* ourselves. No evil is insupportable *but* that which is accompanied with consciousness of wrong. The writing on parchment was expensive, and precluded from the use of books all *but* the opulent. No animals *but* men and monkeys have both eyelids ornamented with eye-lashes. Bismillah (in the name of God) is the commencement of all the chapters of the Koran *but* one.

6. (Daß.) After verbs of denying and doubt, with a negative.

There is no doubt *but* many vegetables and animals have qualities that might be of great use, to the knowledge of which is required only frequent experiments and close attention. It is not impossible *but* I may meet him at Lady Morgan's this evening. I cannot deny *but* he possessed all the exterior marks of a gentleman. We doubt not *but* our readers will be surprised. I do not doubt *but* his intentions were honest.

Observation. That is often added to *but* in this sense.

No doubt was made *but that* Peel would soon eclipse all his contemporaries.

7. (Daß nicht.)

The fire of an enthusiast is never so low, *but* it may be blown again into a flame. No man has ever been drawn to crimes by love or jealousy, envy or hatred, *but* he can tell how easily he might at first have repelled the temptation. A man is never so contented, *but* there are still many things he wishes to possess. No man is so foolish, *but* we may give good counsel sometimes; no man so wise, *but* he may err.

Observation. But, in this signification, is found perhaps more frequently joined to *that* than alone.

Nor can I believe *but that,* if I had the choice of life, I should be able to fill every day with pleasure. I cannot be persuded *but that* marriage is one of the means of happiness. Not *but that* we had those little rubs which Providence sends to enhance the value of its favours. The fog was not so thick *but that* I could see the lofty tower in the distance.

8. (Der nicht.)

There is no man *but* has some good qualities by which he might gain the esteem of his fellow men. There is not a man *but* would rather be young than old. There was scarce a family in the neighbourhood *but* incurred our suspicious. There is not a man in all the world *but* may err, if he take no counsel but his own. We have, it is true, our great men in America; not a city *but* has an ample share of them.

Observation. But in this signification is frequently found joined to *what.* He observed that there was scarce a farmer's daughter within ten miles round *but what* had found him uccessful and faithless. There is no question whatsoever *but what* has some defenders and protectors.

9. (Müſſen, umhin können.) With *can* and *not*.

You cannot *but* know that every human acquisition is valuable in proportion to the difficulty employed in its attainment. I cannot *but* think that crime will decrease in proportion as education increases. I could not *but* observe that very few remained long over their wine. The covetous, the angry, the proud, the talkative, the jealous cannot *but* make ill friends.

10. (Wenn nicht.)

I would tell you the secret *but that* I have resolved it shall remain one.

11. (Ob nicht.)

Who can tell *but* I may still return to conquer Lady Packer? Who knows *but* he may be right?

12. (Ohne.) Joined to the preposition *for*.

He would have been ruined *but for* the timely assistance of a friend. He had done what, *but for* an unforeseen accident, would probably have produced a bloody conflict round the Speaker's chair.

13. (Ohne daß.)

I never sit thus *but* I think of the two lovers, so sweetly described by Mr. Gay, who were struck dead in each other's arms.

If.

676. 1. *If* implies uncertainty and condition, and must not be confounded with *when*, which refers only to time. (See rule 685—2.)

If men would always follow the lights of reason, they would spare themselves much grief. Nothing will ever be attempted *if* all possible objections must first be overcome. *If* power be in the hands of men, it will sometimes be abused. I should always be poor, says Petrarch, *if* I were to open the door to my passions.

2. *If* where there is an auxiliary verb, is frequently omitted, the nominative being put after the verb. (See rule 595.)

Were he really my friend, he would not have spoken thus of me. There is no man that would not feel much mortified, *were he* to know all that is said of him.

Lest.

677. *Lest* corresponds to the German damit nicht.

In disputing set a constant watch over yourself, *lest* you become warm before you are aware. He desired only to be rich and to conceal his riches, *lest* he should be spoiled by the governor of the province. Some learned writers swell their propositions to an enormous

size *lest* they should be mistaken. Reprove not a scorner *lest* he hate thee.

Observation. After verbs of fearing *lest* must be translated by daß alone. I feared *lest* he should take me at my word.

Nor.

678. 1. *Nor,* when alone, answers to the German auch nicht.

Nor can I deny but I have an interest at stake in the affair. He is not married, *nor* his sister.

2. *Nor* is frequently followed by the expletive *either.*

She is not happy, *nor* her mother *either.*

Provided.

679. *Provided* is used either with or without *that.*

I will wait for you, *provided* you do not keep me long. You will succeed, *provided* you persevere. I will lend it you, *provided* that you promise to keep it clean.

Since.

680. *Since* as a conjunction answers to the German da.

You have given me something to desire: I shall long to see the miseries of the world, *since* the sight of them is necessary to happiness. *Since* we must separate, let us do so as friends. It is not strange that we adore the virtuous, *since* men of virtue are so rare to be found.

Still.

681. 1. *Still* refers to the duration of time and answers to the German noch immer.

The moon was high in her summer heaven, and *still* Coningsby strolled on.

2. *Still* answers to doch, dennoch.

Time had laid his hand upon her, *still* she was beautiful in his eyes.

Observation. The German doch is frequently an expletive, and is omitted in English, or the emphasis it marks is given by a turn of the expression.

Sie werden doch kommen, *I hope* you will come. Es iſt doch merkwürdig, it is *very* singular.

3. *Still* is used before comparatives.

It is possible to be a very great man and to be *still* very inferior to Julius Caesar, the most complete character, so Lord Bacon thought, of all antiquity.

Than.

682. *Than* always follows an adjective in the comparative degree.

Nothing is more conducive to happiness *than* the free exercise of the mind in pursuits congenial to it. The early history of Rome is indeed far more poetical *than* anything else in Latin literature. Telescopes of the greatest power do not make the fixed stars appear larger *than* when seen by the naked eye. Birds that inhabit tropical climates have brighter plumage *than* those of the north.

That.

683. 1. *That* answers to the German damit.

France had rejected the faith of Pascal and Decartes as a nursery fable, *that* a courtesan might be her idol, and a madman her priest. Before you undertake anything, consider it well, *that,* if you should not succeed, you may have nothing to reproach yourself with. Abstain, *that* you may enjoy.

2. *That* answers to daß.

We believe it to be a rule without an exception, *that* the violence of a revolution corresponds to the degree of misgovernment which has produced that revolution. Yet let it be remembered, too, *that* there are some truths so plain and evident *that* the opposition to them is strange, unaccountable, and almost miraculous. It is a false notion *that* truth can be freely spoken only under a republican form of government.

3. *That* has sometimes the same meaning as the German weil.

I regret his loss, the more *that* it was not owing to any fault of his.

Observation. That is very frequently omitted in cases where it causes no ambiguity of meaning, especially in familiar language.

Examples in which *that* is, or may be, left out.

I found (that) he was gone. I have no doubt (that) it is good. I knew (that) it was the captain. I hope (that) I shall soon see him. I am convinced (that) he is wrong. It is very natural (that) she should wish to live with her daughter. I wish (that) he would improve: I am sorry (that) you were not there. Thus the soldiers forgot (that) they were citizens, and the orators that they were statesmen. I think (that) nobody can be happy without possessing virtue.

Examples in which *that* cannot, or at least ought not, to be left out.

Lycurgus never considered *that* governments were made for men, and not men for governments. It is true *that* among the dependencies of Athens, seditions assumed a character, more ferocious than even in France, during the reign of terror. Thus the soldiers forgot (that) they were citizens, and the orators *that* they were statesmen. Johnson used to assert *that* Demosthenes spoke to a people of brutes, — to a barbarous people, — *that* there could have been no civilization before the invention of printing. He saw *that* Londoners who did

not read were profoundly ignorant, and he inferred *that* a Greek who had few or no books must have been as uninformed as one of Mr. Thrale's draymen. *That* Demosthenes was a great orator is true, but *that* he was a great statesman, like Themistocles or Pericles, I cannot allow. It was last Friday *that* I saw him for the first time.

Though.

684. *Though* and *although* are synonymous in meaning.

In 1822, Captain Scoresby recognised his father's ship, the Fame, by its inverted image in the air, *although* the ship itself was below the horizon. Intemperance, *though* it may fire the spirits for an hour, will make life short or miserable.

When.

685. 1. *When* answers to the German als.

In 1784, *when* animal magnetism made great noise in the world, the king of France appointed commissioners to examine this pretended science. The Romans had scarcely gone away from Britain, *when* the Britons began to wish they had never left it. The lay of the Nibelungs had long been forgotten, *when*, in the eighteenth century, it was printed from a manuscript in the old library of a noble family.

2. *When* refers to time and answers to the German wenn. (See rule 676.)

When a man indulges in his passions, he is despised even by those who flatter him. Flatterers deceive us even *when* they appear most attached to our interests. We must not trust in fortune even *when* it flatters us the most. The life of Cardinal Fleury must, *when* his situation is considered, be pronounced singularly pure. Riches, *when* acquired at the expense of liberty, become the source of real misery.

Yet.

686. 1. *Yet* answers to the German doch.

Though I may agree to the greatest part of the opinions of a man, *yet* it by no means follows that I should receive them all. Because thou hast seen me, Thomas, thou hast believed: blessed are they who have not seen and *yet* have believed. We hope to grow old, and *yet* we fear old age.

2. *Yet* is frequently used instead of *still* in the sense of noch.

He rejoiced that his endeavours, though *yet* unsuccessful, had supplied him with a source of inexhaustible inquiry. The exercise of swimming is very laborious; I am afraid the act of flying will be *yet* more violent. *Yet* a little while, and a military despotism rose out of the confusion; and *yet* again a little while, and the old dynasty returned.

3. *Yet* is sometimes joined to *as,* in the sense of bis jetzt.

I have not seen him *as yet.*

4. *Yet* always follows *not.*

He is not *yet* come.

5. *Yet* has sometimes the meaning of ſchon.

Is the king awake *yet,* Comtois?

Conjunctions with their Correlatives.

687. Some conjunctions always require after them certain other conjunctions which are called their Correlatives.

As — as.

688. That the sun exhales *as* much vapour *as* is sufficient for rain is past dispute, having been several times proved by actual experiment. *As* soon *as* the dramatist attracts notice to his personal feelings, the illusion is broken. The effect is *as* unpleasant *as* that which is produced by the voice of the prompter on the stage. Sophocles made the Greek drama *as* dramatic *as* was consistent with its original form. Louis XV., with five times *as* many subjects *as* Frederic, and more than five times as large a revenue, had not a more formidable army. Euripides, *as* much *as* Socrates, contributed to the glory of the Athenians.

As — so.

689. *As* I have found the Portuguese *so* I have described them. *As* ten millions of circles can never make a square, *so* the united voice of myriads cannot lend the smallest foundation to falsehood. *As* the schoolmaster is, *so* will the school be. *As* your conduct is, *so* will your reward be.

Both — and.

690. The Royalist had far more *both* of profound *and* of polite learning than the Puritans. *Both* the poem of the Cid *and* the poem of the Nibelungs contain many saturnian verses. Flattery corrupts *both* the receiver *and* the giver. There was in Miltiades *both* the greatest kindness *and* wonderful affability.

Either — or.

691. The character of Frederic the Great was still very imperfectly understood *either* by his subjects, *or* by his neighbours, when events occurred which exhibited it in a strong light. He was fired with the desire of doing something, though he knew not yet with distinctness *either* end *or* means.

Neither — nor.

692. *Neither* blindness *nor* gout, *nor* age, *nor* penury, *nor* domestic afflictions, *nor* political disappointments, *nor* abuse, *nor* proscription, *nor* neglect had power to disturb the sedate and majestic patience of Milton. *Neither* the Castilian *nor* the German minstrels of the middle ages owed anything to Paros, or to ancient Rome. The scholar wanders about the world without pomp or terror, and is *neither* known *nor* valued but by men like himself. A great mind will *neither* give an affront *nor* bear it.

No sooner — than.

693. He was *no sooner* come *than* he started off again. *No sooner* said *than* done.

So — as.

694. The examples should be *so* varied *as* to give the scholar room for the exertion of his faculties. It was observed by Cicero, that nowhere were the true opinions and feelings of the Romans *so* clearly shown *as* at the theatre. There are indeed many anglicised gardens in Germany, laid out *so* whimsically absurd, *as* to excite no other emotion than those of laughter or disgust. Nothing causes me *so* much pain *as* to see guilt triumph.

Observation. The German ſo — alſo usually translated by *as* — *as*, must after a negative be translated by *so* — *as*.

His greatest merit is that he does *not* look *so* stupied *as* he is. Bulwer is *not so* great a writer *as* Scott. Paris is *not so* large *as* London.

So — that.

695. John Visconti, archbishop and prince of Milan, united the finest talents with an ambition *so* insatiable *that* it threatened to swallow up all Italy. The celebrated Hampden was *so* modest, *so* humble, *that* he seemed to have no opinion but what he derived from others. The outlaws *so* harassed York, *that* the Governor sent to the king for help.

Though — yet.

696. Error, *though* it can never be maintained by just reasoning, *yet* may be artfully covered and defended. *Though* curious and inquisitive, *yet* he was naturally modest.

Observation. *Yet* is frequently omitted after *though*.

Though we should examine the whole world, (yet) we shall not find one man so happy as to have nothing left to wish for.

Whether — or.

697. They were compelled to choose *whether* they would trust a tyrant *or* conquer him. We shall find hereby *whether* the author explains his ideas clearly, *whether* he reasons strongly, *whether* he methodizes well; *or*, *whether* he is obscure, weak, and trifling; *or whether* the matter may not be solid and substantial.

Appendix.

Adjectives with the prepositions they govern.

Abhorrent to (from).
Absent from.
Acceptable to.
Accessory to.
According to.
Accountable to (for).
Accustomed to.
Adept in.
Adequate to.
Adherent to.
Adjacent to.
Advantageous to.
Affable to (towards).
Affectionate to (towards).
Affronted at.
Afraid of.
Aghast at.
Agreeable to.
Alarmed at.
Alien to.
Alive to (with).
Amazed at.
Ambitious of.
Amenable to.
Amorous of.
Analagous to.
Analogical to.
Angry with.
Answerable to (for).
Antecedent to.
Anterior to.
Anxious for (about).
Attendant on.
Applicable to.
Apprehensive of.
Appropriate to.
Apt for (at).
Ashamed of.
Astonished at.
Attentive to.
Attributable to.
Averse to.
Aware of.

Bad for.
Bare of.
Beholden to.
Bent on.
Beneficial to.
Big with.
Bigoted to.
Blind of one eye.
— to reason.
— with rage.
Born to.
Bound to (for).
Boundless in.
Bountiful of (to).
Burthensome to.
Busy with (in) (at).

Callous to.
Capable of.
Careful of (about).
Careless of (about).
Cautious of.
Certain of.
Characteristic of.
Chargeable to.
Charitable to.
Choice of.
Civil to.
Clear of (from).
Close by (to).
Coeval with.
Cold to.
Commemorative of.
Commensurate with.
Commodious for.
Common to.
Compatible with.
Competent to.
Complacent to.
Complaisant to.
Conceited of.
Concerned about (at).
Conducive to.
Confederate with.
Confident of.
Conformable to.
Congenial to (with).
Conscious of.
Consequent on (to).
Consistent (with).
Consonant to (with).
Contemporary with.
Content with.
Contented with.
Contiguous to.
Contrary to.
Convenient to (for).
Conversant with (in).
Convertible into.
Corroborative of.
Courteous to.
Covetous of.
Cruel to.
Curious in (after).

Dainty in.
Dead to (of).
Deaf to (of).
Dear to.
Decisive of.
Deducible from.
Deficient in.
Dependant on.
Derivable from.
Descriptive of.
Deserving of.
Desirous of.
Destitute of.
Destructive of (to).
Detrimental to.
Devoid of.
Different from.
Diffident of.
Disaffected to.
Disagreeable to.
Disappointed of (in).
Disgraceful of (to).
Disloyal to.
Disobedient to.
Disobliging to.
Disproportionate from
Dissatisfactory to.
Dissonant to.
Distant from.
Distasteful to.
Distinct from.
Distinguishable from.
Dizzy with.
Doubtful of.
Dubious of.

Due to.
Dull of.
Dutiful to.

Eager after, for.
Elegible for, to.
Eminent for, in.
Emulous of.
Enamoured of.
Engaged in.
Envious of.
Equal to.
Equivalent to.
Essential to.
Even with.
Evident to.
Exempt from.
Exclusive of.
Expert at
Expressive of.

Faint with.
Faithful to.
False to (of).
Famed for.
Familiar with.
Famous for.
Far from.
Fatal to.
Favourable to.
Fearful of.
Fearless of.
Firm to (of).
Fit for.
Fond of.
Foreign to.
Forgetful of.
Frantic with.
Fraught with.
Free from (with, of).
Friendly to.
Fruitful in.
Full of.
Furious with.

Gallant to.
Generous to.
Glad of.
Good for.
Gracious to.
Grateful to.
Gray with.
Great with.
Greedy of.
Grievous to.
Guilty of.

Handy at.
Hard of (to).
Heedful of.
Heedless of.
Hospitable to.
Hungry for.
Hurt at.
Hurtful to.

Ignorant of.
Ill of.
Illustrative of.
Impatient of (for, at).
Impenetrable to.
Imperative on.
Imperceptible to.
Impervious to.
Important to.
Impossible for (to).
Improvident of.
Inaccessible to.
Inadequate to.
Incapable of.
Incentive to.
Incident to.
Inclined to.
Inclusive of.
Incompatible with.
Incompetent to (for).
Incomprehensible to.
Inconceivable to.
Incongruous with.
Inconsiderate of.
Inconsistent with.
Inconvenient to.
Inconvertible into.
Incumbent on.
Indebted to.
Independant of.
Indicative of.
Indifferent to.
Indignant at.
Indispensable to.
Indulgent to.
Inferior to.
Infirm with (of).
Inimical to.
Injurious to.
Innate in.
Innocent of.
Inoffensive to.
Inquisitive about.
Insensible to.
Inseparable from.
Instrumental in.
Insupportable to.
Intent on.
Interesting to.
Intimate with.
Intolerable to.
Intolerant of.
Invisible to.
Irreconcileable with.
Irrelevant to.

Jealous of.
Just to.

Kind to.

Lame of.
Lavish of.
Lawful for.
Level with.
Liable to.
Liberal of (to).
Like to.
Likely to.
Listless of.
Loyal to.

Mad after (for, with).
Material to.
Meet for.
Merciful to.
Mindful of.

Natural to.
Navigable for.
Needful for (to).
Neglectful of.
Negligent of.
New to.
Next to (after).
Niggard of.
Noted for.
Notorious for.
Numb with.

Obedient to.
Obligatory on.
Obnoxious to.
Obsequious to.
Observant of.
Obvious to.
Odious to.
Offended at.
Offensive to.
Ominous of.
Open to.
Opposite to.
Owing to.

Pale with.
Palpable to.
Parallel to (with).

Paramount to.
Partial to.
Particular in.
Patient of.
Payable at (on, to).
Peculiar to.
Perfidious to.
Pernicious to.
Perpendicular to.
Pervious to.
Piqued at.
Pleasant to.
Polite to.
Possessed of.
Possible for.
Posterior to.
Precise in.
Predictive of.
Preferable to.
Pregnant with.
Prejudiced against.
Prejudicial to.
Preliminary to.
Preparative to.
Preparatory to.
Present at.
Previous to.
Prior to.
Privy to.
Prodigal of.
Productive of.
Proficient in.
Profitable to.
Profuse of (in).
Prompt in (to).
Prone to.
Proof against.
Proper for.
Prophetic of.
Proportionable to.
Proud of (to).
Punctual in (to).
Pursuant to.

Quick at.
Qualified for.

Rapt with.
Ready for (at).
Refractory to.
Regardful of.
Regardless of.
Related to.
Relative to.
Remarkable for.
Remote from.
Renowned for.
Replete with.
Repugnant to.
Requisite to (for).
Resentful of.
Reponsible for.
Rich in.
Rid of.
Rife with.
Ripe for.
Rude to.

Sacred to.
Sad at.
Safe from.
Saving of.
Second to.
Secure of (from).
Sensible of.
Separate from.
Serviceable to.
Severe with (to, upon).
Shocked at.
Short of.
Shy of.
Sick of.
Significant of.
Similar to.
Skilful in (at).
Skilled in.
Slow at (in, of).
Solicitous about (for).
Sorry (for).
Sparing of.
Steady in.
Stiff with.
Stout of.
Strange to.
Strict in with.
Studious of.
Subject to.
Subsequent to.
Subservient to.
Subversive of.
Sufficient for (to).
Suitable to.
Superior to.
Sure of.
Surprised at.
Susceptible of.
Suspicious of.

Tantamout to.
Tardy in.
Tenacious of.
Tender of.
Terrified at.
Thankful for.
Thoughtless of.
Thrifty of.
Tired of.
Touched at.
Tributary to.
Troublesome to.
True to.

Unacceptable to.
Unaccountable to.
Unaccustomed to.
Unapt for.
Unassuming in.
Unattached to.
Uncared for.
Uncertain of.
Unconcerned about (at).
Unconscious of.
Undeserving of.
Undisturbed at.
Uneasy at (about).
Unequal to.
Unfaithful to.
Unfavourable to.
Unfit to (for).
Ungrateful to.
Unhandy at.
Unheard of.
Unkind to.
Unmindful of.
Unpolite in (of).
Unsusceptible of.
Unused to.
Unworthy of.
Used to.
Useful to (for).
Useless to.

Vain of.
Versed in.
Vexed at.
Void of.

Warm in.
Wasteful of.
Watchful over (of).
Weary of.
Welcome to.
Wet with.
Wild with.
Worthy of.

Young in.

Zealous of (for).

Verbs with the prepositions they govern.

To Abandon to.
abate from.
abide by.
abide with.
abound with (in).
abscond from.
absent from.
absolve from.
abstain from.
accede to.
accept of.
accomodate to.
accord with.
account for.
accrue from.
accuse of.
accustom to.
acquaint with.
acquiesce in.
acquit of.
act upon.
act up (to).
adapt to.
add to.
addict to.
address to.
adhere to.
adjoin to.
adjudge to.
adjust to.
administer to.
admit of.
admonish of.
advert to.
advise of.
affiance to.
affix to.
agree for (about, on).
agree to.
aim at.
alienate from.
alight from (on).
allot to.
allow of.
allude to.
amount to.
amplify on.
angle for.
animadvert on.
annex to.
announce to.
answer to (for).
apologize for.
appeal to.
appear from (by).

To append to.
appertain to.
apply to.
appoint to.
apprize of.
appropriate to.
approve of.
approximate to.
argue from (on).
arise from.
arrange for.
arrest for.
arrive at.
arrogate to.
ascribe to.
ask for.
aspire to.
assent to.
assign to.
assimilate to.
atone for.
attach to.
attend to (on).
attribute to.
attune to.
avail of.
avert from.
awake from (out, of).
awe into.

Banish from.
bargain for.
bark at.
barter for.
bawl to.
be at.
bear with.
bear up (against).
beckon to.
become of.
beg for (of).
believe in.
belong to.
bequeath to.
bereave of.
bestow on.
bet on.
betake one's self to.
bethink one's self of.
betray to (into).
beware of.
bid defiance to.
blame for.
blush at (for).
bluster at.

To board with.
boast of.
boil with.
border on.
borrow of.
bow to.
brag of.
break out (into).
break in (upon).
break with.
breakfast on.
buckle to.
build on.
burn with.
burst with (from).
burst into.
buy of.

Calculate on.
call at (for, on).
care for.
catch at.
caution against.
cavil at.
cease from.
centre in.
chance upon.
change for (into).
charge with (for).
cheat of.
cleave to.
cling to.
close with.
coalesce with.
cohabit with.
coincide with.
combine with.
come at (by, of).
commend to.
comment on.
commit to.
commune with.
communicate with.
compare to (with).
compensate for.
compete with.
complain of.
compliment on.
comply with.
compound with (of).
conceal from.
concede to.
conclude from.
concur in.
condemn to.

To condescend to.
condole with.
conduce to.
confer with.
confer on.
confide in (to).
confine to.
conform to.
confront with.
congratulate on.
connect with.
connive at.
consent to.
consider of.
consign to.
consist of.
consort with.
conspire against.
construct of.
construe into.
consult with (about).
contend for (with, against).
contract to (for).
contrast with.
contribute to.
converse about (on).
convert into.
convey to.
convict of.
convince of.
cooperate with.
cope with.
copy from.
correspond to (with).
count on.
crave for.
cringe to.
crouch under.
crumble into.
cry for (at, to).
cure of.
curtail of.

Dabble in.
dally with.
dance to.
dangle about (after).
dart at (from).
date from.
deal in (with).
debar from.
debate on.
decide on.
declaim on.
declare for.
decline from.
decrease in.
dedicate to.
To deduce from.
deduct from.
defend from.
defraud of.
degenerate into (from).
deliberate on.
delight in.
deliver from (out, of).
deliver up (to).
demand from.
denounce to.
depart from (for).
depend on.
deprive of.
derive from.
derogate from.
descant on.
descend from.
desert from.
design for.
desist from.
despair of.
despoil of.
detach from.
deter from.
determine on.
deviate from.
devolve on.
devote to.
dictate to.
die of (with).
differ from (with).
diffuse over.
dig for.
digress from.
dilate on.
dine on (off).
disagree with.
disappear from.
disappoint of (in).
disapprove of.
disburden of.
discharge of.
disclose to.
discourage from.
discourse on (about).
disencumber of.
disengage from.
disentangle from.
dislodge from.
dismiss from.
disown for.
dispense with.
dispose for (to, of).
dispossess of.
dispute on (about).
disqualify for.
dissent from.
To dissever from.
dissuade from.
distinguish from.
distribute to.
dive into.
diverge from.
divert from (with).
divest of.
divorce from.
divulge to.
domineer over.
doom to.
dote on.
doubt of.
draw from.
dream of.
drink to.
dwell on.
dwindle into (to).

Ease of.
eat into.
echo with.
efface from.
eject from.
elevate to.
elicit from.
elope from.
emanate from.
emancipate from.
embark for (in).
emerge (from).
emigrate to.
employ in (on).
encroach on.
endear to.
endow with.
engage in (with, to).
enlarge on.
enquire of (for, about, into).
enrich with.
enroll for (in).
entail on.
enter in (into, on).
entitle to.
entrust to.
erase from.
escape from.
espouse to (with).
estimate at.
estrange from.
exact from.
exalt to.
examine into.
exchange for.
excite to.
exclude from.

To exculpate from.
excuse from (for).
exempt from.
exhibit to.
exhort to.
expatiate on.
expel from.
expend on.
experiment on.
explain to.
expose to.
expostulate with.
expound to.
express to.
expunge from.
extend to.
extort from.
extract from.
extricate from.
exude from.
exult at (in).

Fail of.
fall in (into, to, on).
fall in (with).
fall short of.
familiarize to.
fasten to (on).
fatten on.
fawn on.
feast on.
feed on.
felicitate on.
fence with.
fight with (for).
figure to.
find fault (with).
fire at (on).
fish for.
fit for (to, with).
fix on (to).
flinch from.
fling at.
float on.
flock to.
fly at.
foam with.
follow from.
fondle with.
force to (from, into).
forfeit to.
found on.
free from (of).
fret at.
frown at (on).
furnish with.

Gain on.
gape at.
To gasp for.
gaze at (on).
gibe at.
give in (up, out).
glance at.
glare at.
glean from.
glimmer with.
glisten with.
glory in.
glow with.
go on (to).
grant to.
grasp at.
grate against.
grieve at.
grind to.
grope for.
grow into.
growl at.
grumble at.
guard against.
guess at.
gush from.

Habituate to.
hand to.
hand down (to).
hanker after.
hang on.
harp on.
hasten to.
have at.
have pity on.
have occasion for.
have recourse to.
hear of (from).
hearken to.
help to.
hesitate at.
hid from.
hinder from.
hint at.
hiss at.
hit on.
hold to.
hold out to.
honour for.
hope for.
hoot after (at).
hunt after (for).
hurl at.

Identify with.
imbrue in.
immerse in.
impart to.
impel to.
To implant in.
impose on.
impregnate with.
impress on.
improve in.
impute to.
incite to.
incline to.
incorporate with.
incumber with.
inculcate on.
indemnify for.
induce to.
indulge in.
infect with.
infer from.
infest with.
inflame with.
inflict on.
inform of (against).
infringe on.
infuse into.
ingraft on.
ingratiate with.
initiate into (in).
innovate on.
inquire for (after, into, of).
inscribe to (on, with).
insert in.
insinuate into.
insist on.
inspire with.
instigate to.
instil into.
instruct in.
intercede for.
interest in.
interfere with (in).
intermix with.
intermeddle with.
intimate to.
intrench on.
introduce to (into).
intrude on.
intrust with (to).
inure to.
inveigh against.
invest with (in).
involve in.
issue from.

Jeer at.
jest at.
join in (with, to).
judge by (from, of).

Keep from.
kneel to.
knock at.

To Labour under.
languish for.
laugh at.
launch out into.
lavish on.
lay on.
lay hold of.
lay wait for.
lead to.
lean on (against, to).
learn from (of).
leave by.
leer at.
lend to.
let to.
level at (with).
liken to.
light on.
limit to.
link to.
listen to.
live on.
long for (after).
look for (at, into, to, on).
lust after.
luxuriate in.

Make of (for).
make up to.
make over to.
marry to.
match with.
meddle with.
meditate on.
meet with.
mingle with.
minister to.
mistake for.
mix with.
mock at.
moralize upon.
mould into (to, from).
mourn for.
murmur at.
muse on.
mutter to.

Nail to.
negociate with.
nibble at.
nod at.
nominate to.

Object to.
occur to.
operate on.
ordain to.
originate in.

To overrun with.
overwhelm with.
owe to.

Palm on.
palpitate with.
pant with.
part with (from).
partake of (in).
participate in.
pause on.
pay for.
peck at.
peep at.
penetrate into.
perch on.
perish with.
persevere in.
persist in.
pertain to.
pervert to.
petition for.
pin to.
pine at (for).
pique on.
play at cards.
play (on) the piano.
plead for.
plot against.
plunge into.
point at.
ponder on.
pore on (over).
possess of.
pound to.
pray to.
preclude from.
prefer to.
prefix to.
prepare for.
prescribe for.
present to (with).
preserve from.
preside over.
press on.
presume on.
pretend to.
prevail on (against).
prevent from.
prey on.
proceed with (to, from).
profit by.
pronounce on.
proportion to.
propose to.
protest against (to).
profide for (against).
pry into.

To punish for.
purchase of.
put up at.
put up with.

Quarrel about.
quarter on.
quit of.
quote from.

Rail at.
rank with.
rap at.
rate at.
ravish with.
rebel against.
rebuke for.
recall to.
receive from.
reckon on.
reclaim from.
recline on.
recommend to.
reconcile to.
recover from.
recur to.
redden at.
redeem from.
redound to.
reduce to.
refer to.
refine on.
reflect on.
refrain from.
reinstate in.
rejoice at.
relapse into.
relate to.
relieve from.
rely in.
remember to.
remind of.
remit to.
remove to.
repair to.
repent of.
repine at.
reply to.
repose in (on).
reprehend for.
represent to.
reprimand for.
reproach with.
reprove for.
request of.
require of.
requite for.
rescue from.

To reserve to.
resign to.
resolve on (into).
resort to.
rest on.
restore to.
restrain from.
restrict to.
result from.
retaliate on.
retire from.
return to (from).
reveal to.
revenge on.
revert to.
rid of.
ride on (in).
ring with (for).
riot in.
rob of.
rouse from.
rule over.
ruminate on.

Sacrifice to.
satiate with.
save from.
savour of.
say to,
scoff at.
scold (at).
scowl at.
scramble for.
screen from.
screw to (on).
scruple at.
scuffle for.
search for.
seclude from.
secure against (from).
see to (after).
seek for.
seem to.
seize on.
sell to.
send for (to).
sentence to.
separate from.
set at defiance.
set fire to.
set up for.
settle on.
sever from.
shelter from.
shiver with.
shoot at.
show to.
shrink at (from).
To shudder at.
shut out from.
shy at.
sicken at.
sigh after (for).
sink into.
sit at.
smack of.
smell of.
smile at (on).
snap at.
snatch at.
sneer at.
speak of (about, to, with).
spend on.
spit at (on).
spring from.
stake on.
stand to (in).
stare at.
start from.
startle at.
starve with.
stay for.
steal upon (from).
stick to (at).
stir up to.
stock with.
stoop to.
stop at.
store with.
storm at.
stray from.
strike at.
strip of (from).
strive for.
stuff with.
struggle for.
subject to.
submit to.
subscribe to.
subsist on.
subtract from.
succeed in (to).
sue for.
suffer for.
suggest to.
summon to.
supply with.
surrender to.
surround by (with).
suspect of.
swarm with.
swear to.
swell into.
swerve from.

Take for (to).
To take care of.
take offence at.
talk of (about).
tamper with.
tarry for.
taste of.
taunt with.
tax with.
teem with.
temporize with.
tend to.
terminate in.
testify to (against).
thicken into.
think of.
thirst for (after).
throb with.
throw at.
tie to.
totter with.
touch on.
trace to.
trade in.
traffic in.
transfer to.
transform into.
translate into.
transmit to.
transmute into.
transport to.
tread on.
treat of (on).
tremble at (with).
tresspass on (against).
triumph in (over).
trouble about.
truckle to.
trust to.
turn to (into).
twit with.

Unite in.
upbraid with (for).
urge on (to).
use to (for).
usher into.

Value at.
vanish from.
venture at (upon).
vie with.
vouch for.
vow to,

Wait for (on).
wage with.
warn of (from).
watch for.
wean from.

To weep at.
wink at.
wish for.
withdraw from.
withold from.
wonder at.
To work at (for).
wreak on.
wrench from.
wrest from.
wring from.
write to.
To Yawn at.
yearn for (after).
yield to.
yoke with (to).

List of Verbs which govern the accusative in English, but take another case after them in German.

To Abdicate.
abjure.
advise.
aid.
ail.
allow.
answer.
applaud.
approach.
assist.
assure.

Become.
bleed.
brave.

Congratulate.
contradict.
counsel.
counteract.
credit.
curse.

Damage.
defy.
disgrace.
disobey.
displease.
dispossess.
disrelish.
dissuade.
distruct.

Emulate.
encounter.
enjoin.
equal.
enter (in).
To escape.
evade.

Face.
favour.
fit.
flatter.
follow.
forgive.
forego.
front.

Gainsay.
guarantee.

Harm.
help.
hurt.

Imitate.
indulge.
influence.
injure.
intrust.

Join.

Light.

Match.
meet.
mimic.

Obey.
obviate.
oppose.

Pain.
pardon.
To pass.
please.
pledge.
ply.
precede.
prejudice.
profess.

Rejoin.
relish.
remedy.
remember.
renounce.
reprieve.
reprimand.
reproach.
repugn.
requite.
resemble.
resign.
resist.

Second.
serve.
succeed.
sue.
suit.

Thank.
think.
threaten.
trace.
trust.

Underbid.
undergo.

Waylay.
withstand.
wrong.

Verbs which are reflective in German but not in English.

To Abate.
abscond.
acquiesce in.
adopt.
To advance.
agree.
amount to.
apologize.
To appeal to.
apply.
assemble.
assume.

To **B**ack.
bathe.
become.
befit.
behave.
behove.
bend.
beseem.
blend.
boast of.
bow to.
branch.
breed.
bridle.
brighten.

Care for.
chance.
change.
cheer up.
clear up.
close.
coalesce.
combine.
commiserate.
compassionate.
compete.
complain.
compound.
conclude.
condescend.
confide in.
conform to.
consort.
conspire.
consult.
consume.
contend.
contract.
converse.
couch.
counterfeit.
court.
cringe.
crouch.
crowd.
curl.

Decide on.
decline.
decrease.
deliberate on.
depend on.
deserve well of.
determine on.
differ.
diminish.
disband.
To disembark.
dissemble.
dissolve.
divide.
droop.

Embark.
encroach on.
endeavour.
engage.
enlarge upon.
enter into.
excel.
extend.

Fade.
fancy.
feed on.
feel.
feign.
fight.
fret.

Gather.
glory in.
go astray.
grieve at.

Happen.
hasten.
hatch.

Imagine.
improve.
incline to.
increase.
inflame.
inquire after.
intercede for.
interfere.
interpose.
intrude on.

Keep.

Lean.
lie down.
loathe.
lock.
long for.
look out for.

Make for.
marry.
meddle with.
mingle with.
be mistaken.
mix.
move.
To **N**estle.

Occur.
open.
oppose.

Pack off.
pair.
part.
pine.
plot.
prance.
prepare for.
presume.
profess.
purpose.

Quarrel.

Rankle.
rear.
recline.
recollect.
recover.
refer to.
reform.
refrain from.
refuse.
rejoice at.
rejoin.
relate to.
rely on.
remember.
remove.
repair to.
repose on (in).
repudiate.
reside.
resist.
resolve on.
resort to.
retreat.
retrench.
revolt.
revolve.
rhyme.
rise.
rush.

Scramble for.
scatter.
sell.
separate.
settle.
shrink.
shrivel into.
shut.
sit down.

To slink.
spread.
square.
squeeze.
steal away.
stem.
stir.
stoop.
stop.
stretch.
submit.
subside.
suit.
surfeit.
surrender.

To Take cold.
take possession of.
trouble.
trust to.
turn.
twist.

Unite.
usurp.

Veer.
vex.
vomit.

To Warp.
wear off.
wheel.
whirl.
wind.
withdraw.
wonder.
woo.
wriggle.

Yearn.
yield.

Complete list of Abbreviations.

A. Afternoon; answer; active.
A. B. Artium Baccalaureus, Bachelor of Arts.
Ab. About.
Abp. Archbishop.
A. C. Ante Christum, Before Christ.
Act. Acct. Account.
A. D. Anno Domini.
Adml. Admiral.
Admrs. Administrators.
Agt. Against.
Altho. Although.
A. M. *Artium magister,* Master of Arts; *ante meridiem,* in the forenoon; *anno mundi,* in the year of the world.
Amt. Am. Amongst.
A'most. Almost.
Ana. Of each a like quantity.
Anab. Anabaptist.
An't. Am not.
Ans. Answer.
Ap. Apostle; April.
A. R. *Anno regni,* in the year of the reign.
Arn't. Are not; art not.
A. S. S. *Antiquarianae Societatis socius,* Fellow of the Society of Antiquarians.
A. U. C. *Anno urbis conditae,* in the year of Rome.

B. Baron.
B. A. Bachelor of Arts.
Bar. Bart. Baronet.
B. C. Before Christ.
B. D. Bachelor of Divinity.
Ben't. Be not.
Berks. Berkshire.
B. L. Bachelor of Laws.
B. M. Bachelor of Medicine.
'Bove. Above.
Bp. Bishop.
Br. Brother.

Bro'.	Burgh.
Bs.	Baroness.
Bt.	Baronet.
Bucks.	Buckinghamshire.
B. V.	Blessed Virgin.

C.	*Centum*, a hundred; Charles.
Can't.	Cannot.
Cant.	Canticle, or the Song of Salomon; Canterbury.
Capt.	Captain.
Cass.	Cassandra.
Cat.	Catechism.
C. C. C.	Corpus Christi College.
Cent.	*Centum*, a hundred.
Ch.	Church. Chapter.
Chan.	Chancellor.
Chas.	Charles.
Chap.	Chapter.
Chron.	Chronicles.
Cit.	Citizen.
Cl.	Clerk. Clergyman.
Co.	Company; County.
Col.	Colonel; Colossians.
Com.	Commissioner.
Con.	Consols; Constance; Constantine.
Cor.	Corinthians, Corolary.
Corn.	Cornelius.
Cou'd.	Could.
Couldn't.	Could not.
C. P. S.	*Custos privati Sigilli*, Keeper of the Privy Seal.
C. R.	*Carolus rex*, King Charles.
Cr.	Creditor.
Crim. con.	Criminal conversation.
C. S.	*Custos sigilli*, Keeper of the Seal.
Cts.	Countess.
Cust. Rot.	Custos Rolutorum, Keeper of the Rolls.
Cur.	Curate; Curius.
Cwt.	Hundredweight.

D.	Doctor; five hundred; Duke; Dean; Division.
d.	*Denarius*, penny.
'd.	Would; had.
d'.	do.
Dan.	Daniel.
D. C.	Deacon of Christ church.
D. D.	Doctor of Divinity.
Dd.	Delivered.
Deac.	Deacon.
Dec. (10ber)	December.
Deut.	Deuteronomy.
Dit. / Do.	Ditto, the same.
Doesn't.	Does not.
Don't.	Do not.
Do't.	Do it.
Dow.	Dowager.
Dr.	Doctor; Debtor.

Ds.	Duchess.
D'ye.	Do you.
E.	Earl.
'e.	ye; you.
Earld.	Earldom.
Ed.	Edition.
Edm.	Edmund.
Edw.	Edward.
E'en. Evn.	Even.
E'er.	Ever.
E. g.	*Exempli gratia,* for example.
Eliz.	Elizabeth.
'em.	Them.
Eng.	England.
Ens.	Ensign.
Ep.	Epistle.
Eph.	Ephesians.
Esa.	Esaias.
Esq.	Esquire.
etc.	*et caetera,* and so on.
Ex. Excy.	Excellency.
Exp.	Express; Explanation.
Ev'ry.	Every.
F. A. S.	Fellow of the Antiquarian Society.
Feby.	February.
F. L. S.	Fellow of the Linnean Society.
Fol.	Folio.
'fore.	afore.
F. P.	Fire Plug.
Fr.	France; Francis;
F. R. S.	Fellow of the Royal Society.
F. S. A.	Fellow of the Society of Arts.
G.	God; George; Gospel.
'gainst.	against.
Gal.	Galations.
Gar.	Garrison.
G. C. B.	Knight Grand Cross of the Bath.
Gen.	General; Genesis.
Genmo.	Generalissimo.
Gent.	Gentleman.
Geo.	George.
Gi'me.	give me.
Gos.	Gospel.
Gov.	Governor.
Gr.	Great.
G. R.	*Georgius Rex,* King George.
Greg.	Gregory.
Grs.	Grains.
Gt.	Great.
Hadn't.	Had not.
Han't.	Have not.
Hants.	Hampshire.
Hark'e.	Hark ye (you).

Havn't.	Have not.
Hble.	Honorable.
H. B. M.	His (her) British Majesty.
Hd.	Honored.
h. e.	*hoc est,* that is.
Heb.	Hebrew.
He'd.	He had, he would.
He'll.	He will.
Hen.	Henry.
Here's.	Here is.
He's.	He is.
Hhd.	Hogshead.
Hier.	Hieronymus.
H. M's.	His (Her) Majesty's.
H. M. S.	His (Her) Majesty's Ship (Service).
Hon.	Honorable.
Howe'r.	However.
H. P.	Half pay.
H. S.	*Hic situs,* here lies.
Hum.	Humphry.
Hund.	Hundred.
Hunts.	Huntingdonshire.
I.	In.
Ib. ibid.	*ibidem,* in the same place.
I'd.	I had, I would.
id.	*idem,* the same.
i. e.	*id est,* that is.
I'll.	I will.
Illus.	Illustrious.
I'm.	I am.
In.	Inches.
Incog.	Incognito.
Ino.	John.
Inst.	Instant (this month), Institution. Instrument.
I. P.	Irish Peer.
Isn't.	is not.
I'the.	in the.
It's.	it is.
I've.	I have.
Jac.	Jacob.
Jan.	January.
Jer.	Jeremiah.
Jest.	Jesuit.
J. H. S.	Jesus hominum Salvator, Jesus the Saviour of men.
Jos.	Joseph.
Josh.	Joshua.
J. R.	Jacobus Rex, King James.
Jud.	Judges.
Jul.	July.
Jun.	Junior; June.
Just.	Justice.
K. Kg.	King.
K. B.	Knight of the Bath.
K. C. B.	Knight Commander of the Bath.
K. M.	Knight of Malta.

K. P.	Knight of St. Patrick.
K. G.	Knight of the Garter. King George.
Kt. Knt.	Knight.
K. T.	Knight of the Thistle.
L.	Lord; *liber,* book; line; latitude.
£	pound sterling.
Ladp.	Ladyship.
Lat.	Latitude.
Ldp.	Lordship.
lb.	Pound weight.
Ld.	Lord.
L. D.	Lady Day.
Let'em.	Let them.
Let's.	Let us.
Lev.	Leviticus.
Lieut.	Lieutenant.
'll.	will.
L. L. D.	*Legum Doctor,* Doctor of Laws (of the Canon and Civil Law).
L. M.	Last month.
Lon.	Longitude.
Lond.	London.
Lp.	Lordship.
Lr. Lt.	Letter.
L. S.	Locus Sigilli, Place of the Seal.
M.	Majesty; Marquis; Member; *mille,* a thousand
'm.	am.
M. A.	Master of Arts.
Ma'am. Mm.	Madam.
Maj.	Major.
Mar.	March, Martyr.
Mart.	Martin. Martial.
Mat.	Mathew.
Math.	Mathematics.
Mayn't.	may not.
M. B.	Bachelor of Medicine (Music).
Mc. M'.	Mac.
M. D.	*Medicinae Doctor,* Doctor of Medicine.
Mem.	*Memento,* remember, memoranda.
Messrs.	Messieurs.
Mich.	Michael; Michaelmas.
Mightn't.	Might not.
Min.	Minister.
Mons.	Monsieur.
M. P.	Member of Parliament.
Mr.	Master.
Mrs.	Mistress.
Ms.	Miss.
Ms.	Manuscript.
Mss.	Manuscripts.
M. S.	Memoriae sacrum, sacred to the Memory.
N.	Note.
Nat.	Nathaniel; Nativity.
N. B.	*Nota bene,* take notice.
Needn't.	Need not.
Nem. Con.	*Nemine contradicente,* unanimously.
Nic.	Nicholas, Nicodemus.

N. L.	North Latitude.
Notts.	Northamshire.
No.	Number.
N. S.	New Style.
N't.	Not.
N. T.	New Testament.
Nov.	November.
Num.	Numbers.
O.	Oliver; Old.
o'.	Of.
Ob.	Objection.
Ob.	*Obolus,* a half penny.
Obd. Obt.	Obedient.
Obj.	Objection.
O'er.	Over.
On't.	On it.
O. P.	Out of Print; Old Price.
O. S.	Old Style.
O. T.	Old Testament.
Oxon.	Oxford.
Oz.	Ounce.
P.	President; Parliament; Prince page; per pro.
P. C.	Privy Councillor.
p. C.	per cent.
pd.	paid
Par.	Parish.
Parl.	Parliament.
Pat.	Patriarch; Patriot.
Pen.	Penelope.
Pent.	Pentecost.
Pet.	Peter; Petrarch.
Phil.	Philip; Philipians, Philosopher.
Philem.	Philemon.
P. M.	Post meridiem, in the afternoon.
P. M. G.	Professor of Music at Gresham College.
P.	Portion.
'pothecary.	Apothecary.
P.	priest; primitive; professor.
'prithee.	I pray thee
Prof.	Professor.
Pr. Th. Gr.	Professor of Theology at Gresham College.
P. S.	Postscript.
Ps.	Princess.
Pt.	Present.
Psal.	Psalm. Psalmist.
pwt.	pennyweight.
Q.	Queen; Question.
q.	*quadrans;* farthing; quasi
Q. C.	Queen's College.
Q. d.	quasi dicat, as much as to say.
Q. E. D.	*quod erat demonstrandum.* which was to be demonstrated.
Q. l.	*quantum libet,* as much as you please.
Qr.	Quarter.
Qs.	*quantum sufficit,* a sufficient quantity.
Qy.	Query.

R.	Rex; Regina; *recipe,* take.
R. A.	Royal Artillery.
're.	are.
Recd.	Received.
Red.	Reduced.
Reg.	Regius.
Regimt.	Regiment.
Regst.	Register.
Regt.	Regent.
Reg. Prof.	Regius Professor.
Rel.	Relation; Religion; Relative.
Ret.	Return.
Rev.	Revelation; Reverend.
Revd.	Reverend.
Rich.	Richard.
R. M.	Royal Marines.
R. N.	Royal Navy.
Ro.	Robert; Roger.
Robt.	Robert.
Rom.	Romans.
R. P.	*Respublica,* the republic.
R. S. S.	*Regiae Societatis Socius,* Fellow of the Royal Society.
'rt.	art.
Rt.	Right.
Rt. Hon.	Right Honorable.
Rt. Revd.	Right Reverend.
Rt. wpful.	Right Worshipful.
S.	*Solidus,* shilling; South; Saint.
's.	is; us.
S. A.	Secundum Artem, according to the rules of Art.
Salop.	Shropshire.
Sam.	Samuel.
S. C.	*Senatus consultum,* decree of the senate.
Scan. Mag.	*Scandalum magnatum,* Scandal of the Peerage.
'scap't.	escaped.
Scil.	*Scilicet,* to wit, namely.
Sd.	Said.
S'ennight.	Seven nights, a week.
Sep.	September.
Serj.	Serjeant.
Servt.	Servant.
Sh.	Shire.
Shan't.	Shall not.
She'd.	She had; She would.
She'll.	She will.
She's.	She is.
Shouldn't.	Should not.
'size.	assize.
S. N.	Secundum naturam; according to Nature.
Sol.	Solution.
S. P.	Scotch Peer.
Sp.	Spain; Spanish.
Specially.	Especially.
'spy.	espy.
Squire.	Esquire.
ss.	*semissis,* half a pound.
'st.	hast.

S. T. P.	*Sanctae Theologiae Professor,* Professor of Holy Divinity.
St.	Saint; Street.
Steph.	Stephen.
'stead.	Instead.
Sterl.	Sterling.
Swd.	Sword.
T.	Thomas.
't.	it.
t.	to.
Ta'en.	taken.
Th.	the.
Th'art.	thou art.
That's.	that is.
The.	Theophilus.
There's.	there is.
They'd.	they had; they would.
They'll.	they will.
They're.	they are.
They've.	they have.
Tho.	Thomas.
Tho'.	Though.
Thou'dst.	thou hadst; thou wouldst.
Thou'lt.	thou wilt.
Thou'rt.	thou art.
Thou'st.	thou hast.
Thro'.	Through.
'tis.	it is.
Tisn't.	it is not.
To. Tob.	Tobias.
'twant.	it was not.
'twas.	it was.
'twasn't.	it was not.
'twere.	it were.
'twixt.	betwixt.
U.	ultimo, last.
U. S.	United States.
V.	*Vide,* see; verse; virgin; viscount.
V. g.	*verbi gratia,* for example.
Viz.	*videlicet,* namely.
Vol.	Volume.
Vs.	Viscountess.
W.	West.
Wasn't.	was not.
We'd.	we had; we would.
We're.	we are.
Weren't.	were not.
We've.	we have.
What's.	what is.
Where's.	where is.
Who's.	who is.
Will. Wm.	William.
Wilts.	Wiltshire.
Wi'me.	with me.
Won't.	will not.

Wou'dn't.	would not.
Wp.	Worship.
Wpful.	Worshipful.
Xmas.	Christmas.
Xn. Xtian.	Christian.
Xt.	Christ.
Y'.	ye.
Ye.	the.
Ym.	them.
Yn.	then.
Ys.	this.
Yt.	that.
You'd.	you had; you would.
You'll.	you will.
You're.	you are.
You've.	you have.
Yu.	thou.

&	*et*, and.
&c.	*et caetera*, and so on.
4to.	Quarto, four leaves to a sheet.
8vo.	Octavo, eight leaves to a sheet.
12mo.	Duodecimo, twelves.
18mo.	Octodecimo, eighteens.
24mo.	Vicesimo-quarto, twenty-fours.
1st.	first.
2nd.	second.
3rd.	third.
4th.	fourth.

Im Verlage der Unterzeichneten sind ferner erschienen:

A practical German Grammar, being the shortest and easiest Method of acquiring a thorough knowledge of the *German language.* By Dr. *A. Baskerville.* 8. Geb. 1⅓ Thlr.

Ahn, Dr. F., Praktischer Lehrgang zur schnellen und leichten Erlernung der französischen Sprache. Erster Cursus. Einhundertzweiundfünfzigste Auflage. brosch. 7½ Sgr.

— — Praktischer Lehrgang zur schnellen und leichten Erlernung der französischen Sprache. Zweiter Cursus. Neununddreißigste Auflage. brosch. 7½ Sgr.

— — Grundzüge der englischen Aussprache, für Gymnasien und Realschulen. Zweite Auflage. brosch. 7½ Sgr.

— — Praktischer Lehrgang zur schnellen und leichten Erlernung der englischen Sprache. Erster Cursus. Neunte Auflage. brosch. 7½ Sgr.

— — Praktischer Lehrgang zur schnellen und leichten Erlernung der englischen Sprache. Zweiter Cursus. Dritte Auflage. brosch. 7½ Sgr.

— — Praktischer Lehrgang zur schnellen und leichten Erlernung der italienischen Sprache. Erster Cursus. Dritte Auflage. brosch. 7½ Sgr.

— — Praktischer Lehrgang zur schnellen und leichten Erlernung der italienischen Sprache. Zweiter Cursus. brosch. 7½ Sgr.

— — **Nouvelle Méthode pratique et facile pour apprendre la langue anglaise.** Premier Cours. **Sixième édition.** broché. 7½ Sgr.

— — **Nouvelle Méthode pratique et facile pour apprendre la langue anglaise.** Second Cours. **Deuxième édition.** broché. 7½ Sgr.

— — **Nouvelle méthode pratique et facile pour apprendre la langue italienne.** Premier Cours. **Deuxième édition.** broché. 7½ Sgr.

— — **Nouvelle Méthode pratique et facile pour apprendre la langue italienne.** Second Cours. broché. 7½ Sgr.

— — Französisches Lesebuch für Gymnasien und höhere Bürgerschulen. Erster Theil. Für die unteren und mittleren Classen. Neunzehnte Auflage. 8. brosch. 15 Sgr.

Ahn, Dr. F. Französisches Lesebuch für Gymnasien und höhere Bürgerschulen. Zweiter Theil. Für die oberen Classen. Dritte Auflage. 8. 15 Sgr.

— — Französisches Lesebuch für höhere Töchterschulen. Vierzehnte Auflage. brosch. 15 Sgr.

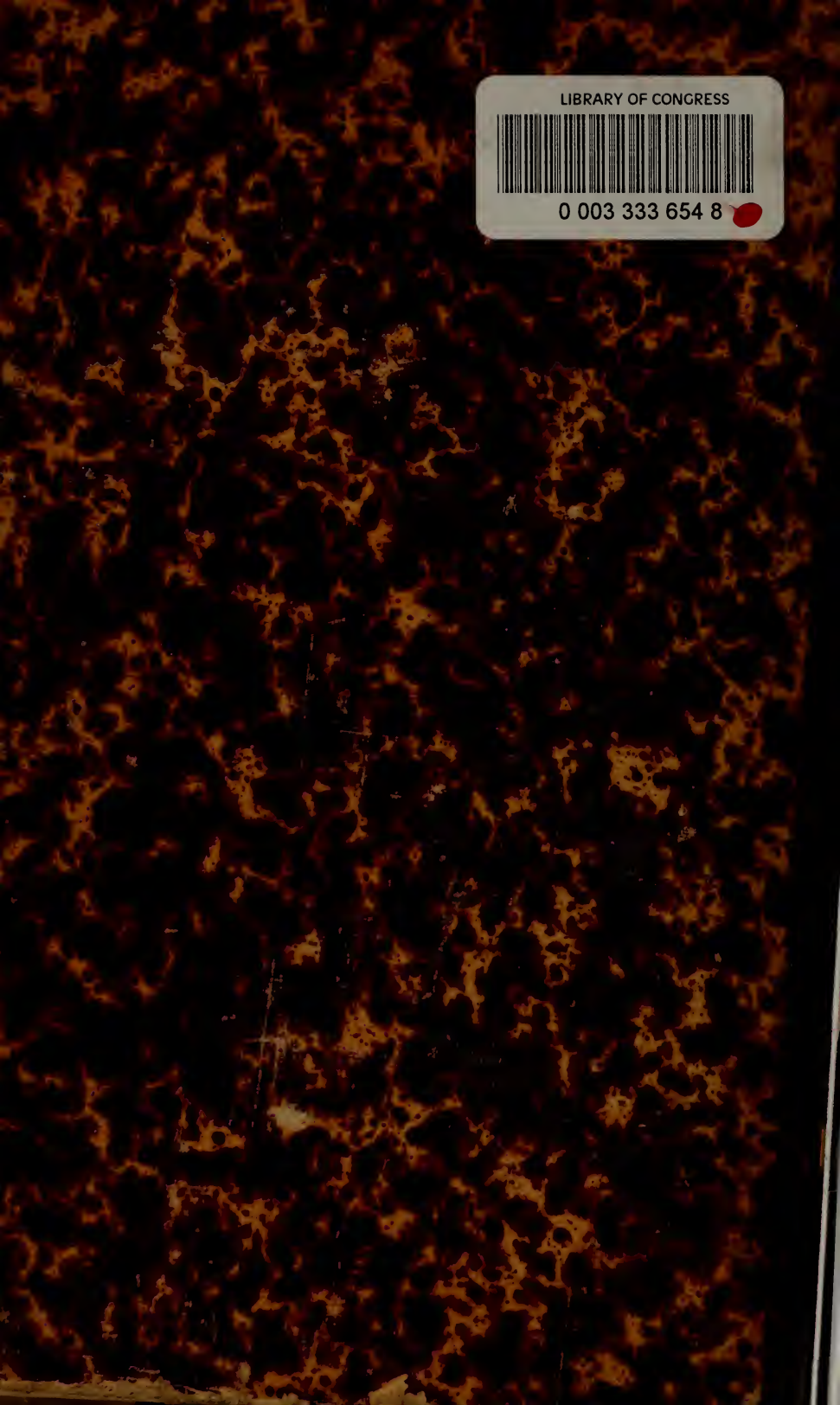
— — Englisches Lesebuch für höhere Töchterschulen. brosch. 15 Sgr.

— — Englisches Lesebuch für Gymnasien und Realschulen. gr. 8. 20 Sgr.

— — Französisches Gesprächbuch für höhere Töchterschulen. brosch. 9 Sgr.

— — Handbuch der französischen Umgangssprache. Zweiundzwanzigste Auflage. brosch. 12½ Sgr.

M. DuMont-Schauberg'sche Buchhandlung
in Köln.


LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 003 333 654 8

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 003 333 654 8